

**Project no.507618**

**DELOS**

**A Network of Excellence on Digital Libraries**

**Instrument: Network of Excellence**

**Thematic Priority: IST-2002-2.3.1.12**

**Technology-enhanced Learning and Access to Cultural Heritage**

# **The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model Foundations for Digital Libraries**

**Version 0.96**

**November 2007**

Project co-funded by the European Commission within the Sixth Framework Programme  
(2002-2006)

This volume is one of a series of texts written in the context of the DELOS Network of Excellence on Digital Libraries ([www.delos.info](http://www.delos.info)).

© 2007 DELOS Network of Excellence on Digital Libraries All rights reserved.

No part of this volume may be reproduced in any form or by any electronic or mechanical means (including photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval) without permission from the publisher.

# The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model

## Foundations for Digital Libraries

L. Candela <sup>1</sup>, D. Castelli <sup>1</sup>, N. Ferro <sup>2</sup>, Y. Ioannidis <sup>3</sup>, G. Koutrika <sup>3</sup>, C. Meghini <sup>1</sup>, P. Pagano <sup>1</sup>,  
S. Ross <sup>4</sup>, D. Soergel <sup>5</sup>

M. Agosti <sup>2</sup>, M. Dobрева<sup>4</sup>, V. Katifori <sup>3</sup>, H. Schuldt <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Institute of Information Science and Technologies (ISTI)  
Italian National Research Council (CNR)  
Pisa, Italy

<sup>2</sup> Department of Information Engineering (DEI)  
University of Padova  
Padova, Italy

<sup>3</sup> Department of Informatics and Telecommunications  
University of Athens  
Athens, Greece

<sup>4</sup> Humanities Advanced Technology and Information Institute (HATII)  
University of Glasgow  
Glasgow, United Kingdom

<sup>5</sup> College of Information Studies  
University of Maryland,  
College Park, Maryland

<sup>6</sup> Database and Information Systems Group  
University of Basel,  
Basel, Switzerland

## Table of Contents

Table of Contents .....	4
Table of Figures .....	6
About this Volume .....	8

---

### **PART I The Digital Library Manifesto..... 11**

---

I.1 Introduction .....	12
I.1.1 What is a Manifesto.....	12
I.1.2 Motivation.....	13
I.2 The Digital Libraries Universe: A Three-Tier Framework.....	16
I.3 The Digital Libraries Universe: Main Concepts.....	18
I.3.1 Content.....	18
I.3.2 User .....	18
I.3.3 Functionality .....	19
I.3.4 Quality .....	19
I.3.5 Policy.....	19
I.3.6 Architecture .....	19
I.4 The Digital Library Universe: The Main Roles of Actors .....	21
I.4.1 DL End-Users .....	21
I.4.2 DL Designers .....	21
I.4.3 DL System Administrators .....	21
I.4.4 DL Application Developers.....	22
I.5 Reference Frameworks.....	23
I.6 Digital Library Manifesto: Conclusions.....	25

---

### **PART II The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model in a Nutshell..... 26**

---

II.1 Introduction.....	27
II.1.1 Motivations.....	29
II.1.2 Guide to using the Reference Model.....	30
II.1.2.1 Concept Maps .....	31
II.1.2.2 Notational Conventions .....	31
II.2 The Constituent Domains.....	32
II.2.1 DL Resource Domain.....	33
II.2.2 Content Domain.....	34
II.2.3 User Domain.....	37
II.2.4 Functionality Domain.....	39
II.2.5 Policy Domain .....	44
II.2.6 Quality Domain.....	46
II.2.7 Architecture Domain.....	48
II.3 The Interoperability Issue .....	52

II.4	The Preservation Issue .....	54
II.5	Related Work.....	57
II.5.1	The CIDOC Conceptual Reference Model.....	57
II.5.2	Stream, Structures, Spaces, Scenarios, and Societies: The 5S Framework.....	58
II.5.3	The DELOS Classification and Evaluation Scheme.....	60
II.5.4	DOLCE-based Ontologies for Large Software Systems .....	61
II.6	Reference Model in a Nutshell: Concluding remarks.....	63

**PART III The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model Concepts and Relations..... 64**

III.1	Introduction.....	65
III.2	Concepts' Hierarchy .....	66
III.3	Reference Model Concepts' Definitions .....	71
III.4	Relations' Hierarchy.....	150
III.5	Reference Model Relations' Definitions .....	152
	Conclusions .....	163
Appendix A.	Concept Maps in A4 format.....	164
A.1.	DL Resource Domain Concept Map.....	164
A.2.	Content Domain Concept Map.....	165
A.3.	User Domain Concept Map.....	166
A.4.	Functionality Domain Concept Map.....	167
A.5.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: Access Resource Functions .....	168
A.6.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: Specializations of the Manage Resource Function.....	169
A.7.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: General Manage Resource Functions.....	170
A.8.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Information Object Functions .....	171
A.9.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Actor Functions .....	172
A.10.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: Collaborate Functions.....	173
A.11.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DL Functions .....	174
A.12.	Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage & Configure DLS Functions .....	175
A.13.	Policy Domain Concept Map .....	176
A.14.	Policy Domain Concept Map: Policies' Hierarchy .....	177
A.15.	Quality Domain Concept Map.....	178
A.16.	Architecture Domain Concept Map.....	179
	Index of Concepts and Relations .....	180
	Bibliography .....	182

## Table of Figures

Figure I.2-1. DL, DLS, and DLMS: A Three-tier Framework.....	16
Figure I.3-1. The Digital Library Universe: Main Concepts.....	18
Figure I.4-1. The Main Roles of Actors versus the Three-tier Framework.....	21
Figure I.4-2. Hierarchy of Users' Views .....	22
Figure I.5-1. The Digital Library Development Framework.....	24
Figure II.1-1. The Digital Library Universe.....	27
Figure II.1-2. The Reference Model as the core of the Development Framework.....	29
Figure II.1-3. A concept map showing the key feature of concept maps.....	31
Figure II.2-1. DL Domains Hierarchy Concept Map.....	32
Figure II.2-2. DL Resource Domain Concept Map .....	34
Figure II.2-3. Content Domain Concept Map.....	35
Figure II.2-4. User Domain Concept Map .....	38
Figure II.2-5. Functionality Domain Concept Map .....	40
Figure II.2-6. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Access Resource Functions .....	40
Figure II.2-7. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Specializations of the Manage Resource Functions .....	41
Figure II.2-8. Functionality Domain Concept Map: General Manage Resource Functions Applied to all Resources .....	41
Figure II.2-9. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Information Object Functions ..	42
Figure II.2-10. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Actor Functions.....	42
Figure II.2-11. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Collaborate Functions .....	43
Figure II.2-12. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DL Functions.....	43
Figure II.2-13. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DLS Functions.....	44
Figure II.2-14. Policy Domain Concept Map.....	45
Figure II.2-15. Policy Domain Concept Map: Policies' Hierarchy .....	46
Figure II.2-16. Quality Domain Concept Map .....	47
Figure II.2-17. Architecture Domain Concept Map.....	50
Figure II.5-1. 5S - Map of formal definitions.....	59
Figure II.5-2. 5S - DL ontology.....	60
Figure A-1. Resource Domain Concept Map (A4 format).....	164
Figure A-2. Content Domain Concept Map (A4 format).....	165
Figure A-3. User Domain Concept Map (A4 format).....	166
Figure A-4. Functionality Domain Concept Map (A4 format) .....	167
Figure A-5. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Access Resource Functions (A4 format)	168
Figure A-6. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Specializations of the Manage Resource Function (A4 format) .....	169
Figure A-7. Functionality Domain Concept Map: General Manage Resource Functions (A4 format).....	170
Figure A-8. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Information Object Functions (A4 format).....	171

Figure A-9. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Actor Functions (A4 format) .... 172  
Figure A-10. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Collaborate Functions (A4 format) ..... 173  
Figure A-11. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DL Functions (A4 format)..... 174  
Figure A-12. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage & Configure DLS Functions (A4 format)..... 175  
Figure A-13. Policy Domain Concept Map (A4 format) ..... 176  
Figure A-14. Policy Domain Concept Map: Policies' Hierarchy (A4 format)..... 177  
Figure A-15. Quality Domain Concept Map (A4 format)..... 178  
Figure A-16. Architecture Domain Concept Map (A4 format)..... 179

## **About this Volume**

The digital library universe is a complex framework. The growth and evolution of this framework in terms of approaches, solutions and systems, has led to the need of common foundations capable to set the ground for better understanding, communicating, and stimulating further evolutions in this area. The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model aims at contributing to the creation of such foundations. It exploits the collective understanding that has been acquired on Digital Libraries by European research groups active in the Digital Library field throughout many years, both within the DELOS Network of Excellence and outside, as well as by other groups around the world. It identifies the set of concepts and relationships among them characterising the essence of the digital library universe. This model has to be considered as the map allowing various Digital Library involved players to follow the same route and share a common understanding in dealing with the entities of such universe.

This volume presents the DELOS Reference Model by introducing the principles governing it as well as the set of concepts and relationships that collectively capture the intrinsic nature of the various entities of the digital library universe. Because of the broad coverage of the digital library universe, its evolving nature, and the lack of any previous agreement on its foundations, the Reference Model necessarily is a living framework, so is this document to be considered. Continuous evolutions are envisaged in order to gain a number of well formed and consolidated definitions, shared by the digital library community.

## **The Structure of the Volume**

The volume is organised in three parts, each potentially constituting a document on its own. Each of the three parts describes the Digital Library universe with a different perspective which is driven by a diverse trade-off between abstraction and concretisation. Thus each part is equally important to capture the nature of the Digital Library Universe. The second part is based on the first one, and the third part is based on the second one, i.e., they rely on the notions described previously for introducing additional that characterise these notions more precisely. In particular, “PART I The Digital Library Manifesto”, already published as a separate document in January 2006, introduces the main notions characterising the whole digital library universe in quite abstract terms; “PART II The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model in a Nutshell”, specialises these notions by introducing the main concepts and relationships populating each of the aspects captured by the previous one; finally, “PART III The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model Concepts and Relations” precisely describes each of the identified concepts and relations by explaining their rationale as well as by presenting examples of instantiation of them in concrete scenarios.

Even if it is possible to choose different routes through the volume, or simply focus on a single part, the whole is structured so that it can be read from cover to cover.

Section I.1 introduces “PART I The Digital Library Manifesto” by providing the motivations pervading the whole activity.

Section I.2 presents the relationships among three types of relevant “systems” in the Digital Library universe, namely Digital Library (DL), Digital Library System (DLS), and Digital Library Management System (DLMS).

Section I.3 describes the main concepts characterizing the above three systems and thus the whole Digital Library universe, i.e., content, user, functionality, quality, policy, and architecture.

Section I.4 introduces the main roles that actors may play within digital libraries, i.e., end-user, designer, administrator, and application developer.

Section I.5 describes the reference frameworks that are needed to clarify the DL universe at different levels of abstraction, i.e., the Digital Library reference model and the Digital Library reference architecture.

Section I.6 reports concluding remarks on The Digital Library Manifesto.

Section II.1 introduces “PART II The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model in a Nutshell” by summarising the content of the Manifesto and setting the basis for reading and using the rest of the part.

Section II.2 presents the constituent domains by briefly describing their rationale and providing each of them with a concept map that reports the main related concepts and relations connecting them.

Section II.3 addresses the Interoperability issue. In particular, it describes this problem by pointing out the instruments that the Reference Model makes available for dealing with it.

Section II.4 introduces the Preservation issue and discusses how the current model can be used and eventually extended to capture this important aspect of the digital library universe.

Section II.5 discusses related works. In particular, this section highlights the similarities and the differences between this reference model and similar initiatives like the 5S Framework and the CIDOC Conceptual Reference Model.

Section II.6 reports concluding remarks on the DELOS Digital Library Reference Model as presented in PART II.

Section III.1 introduces “PART III The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model Concepts and Relations” by highlight the role of this part.

Section III.2 presents the hierarchy of the Concepts constituting the Reference Model.

Section III.3 provides a definition for each of the 217 Concepts currently constituting the model. Each definition is complemented by the list of relations connecting the concept to the other concepts, the rationale for having introduced this concept in the model, and examples of concrete instances of the concept in real scenarios.

Section III.4 presents the hierarchy of the identified Relations.

Section III.5 provides a definition for each of the 52 Relations currently constituting the model. Each definition is complemented by the rationale for having it in the model and some examples of concrete instances of them in real scenarios.

Section Conclusions sums up the volume.

## **Acknowledgements**

Many people have contributed to this activity at different level.

First and foremost, the authors wish to thank the DELOS Network of Excellence on Digital Library Consortium that gave them the chance to work on the fascinating topic of building foundations for Digital Libraries. In particular, we want to thank Costantino Thanos (CNR-ISTI), co-ordinator of the DELOS of Network of Excellence and to his Deputy, Vittore Casarosa (CNR-ISTI), for their continuous encouragement and for the many useful discussions on the proposed conceptualisation.

The authors also wish to acknowledge the considerable input to the model received from the participants to the DELOS Reference Model Workshop held in Frascati (Rome) on June 2006. The comments, visions and insights received on the initial release of the model have been

very helpful for the rest of the activity. The workshop participants besides the authors were: José Borbinha (DEI-IST-UTL), Martin Braschler (Zurich University of Applied Sciences Winterthur), Vittore Casarosa (ISTI-CNR), Tiziana Catarci (Università degli Studi di Roma “La Sapienza”), Stavros Christodoulakis (Technical University of Crete), Edward Fox (Virginia Tech), Norberth Fuhr (Universität Duisburg-Essen), Stefan Gradmann (Universität Hamburg), Ariane Labat (EC), Mahendra Mahey (UKOLN), Patricia Manson (EC), Andy Powell (UKOLN), Hans-Jörg Schek (ETH), MacKenzie Smith (MIT Libraries), Costantino Thanos (ISTI-CNR), and Theo van Veen (National Library of the Netherlands).

This volume has also benefited from the comments and ideas discussed during two workshops titled “Foundations of Digital Libraries”. The two workshops were held, respectively, in conjunction with the ACM IEEE Joint Conference on Digital Libraries (JCDL 2007) and the 11th European Conference on Research and Advanced Technologies on Digital Libraries (ECDL 2007). As it is not possible to list all the participants individually, we thank all of them collectively and we only mention the especially helpful comments received from Edward Fox (Virginia Tech), Geneva Henry (Rice University), and Marianne Backes (Centre Virtuel de la Connaissance sur l’Europe).

Thanks to Perla Innocenti (HATII) for reviewing the sections on Policy and drawing our attention to the fact that we had not represented the time dimensions.

Thanks also to Professor Stavros Christodoulakis (Technical University of Crete) for actively partaking to some of the Reference Model internal meetings and raising useful comments about the management of multimedia content, and to Prof. Hans Scheck (University of Konstanz), leader of the DELOS work package that gave rise to the Reference Model activity, for the key contribution he has given to the start-up of this activity and for his useful comments.

We are particularly grateful to Maria Bruna Baldacci (ISTI-CNR) for the notably help in improving the readability of this volume and to Francesca Borri (ISTI-CNR) for her contribution to the graphical editing of this and the other volumes forming the Reference Model document suite.

## **PART I The Digital Library Manifesto**

## I.1 Introduction

The term ‘Digital Library’ is currently used to refer to systems that are very heterogeneous in scope and yield very different functionality. These systems span from digital object and metadata repositories, reference-linking systems, archives, and content administration systems (mainly developed by industry), to complex systems that integrate advanced digital library services (mainly developed in research environments). This “overload” of the term ‘Digital Library’ is a consequence of the fact that there is not yet an agreement on what Digital Libraries are and what functionality is associated with them. This results in lack of interoperability and reuse of both contents and technologies. This document attempts to put some order in the field for the benefit of its future advancement.

### I.1.1 What is a Manifesto

According to the Merriam-Webster Dictionary, a *manifesto* is “a written statement declaring publicly the intentions, motives, or views of its issuer”. Similarly, according to Wikipedia, a manifesto is “a public declaration of principles and intentions”. The ‘*Declaration of the Rights of Man and the Citizen*’ in France in 1789 and the ‘*Declaration of Independence*’ in the US in 1776 are two well-known manifestos that have set the stage for the establishment of two major countries and have had major influence on the recent history of the world. The production of manifestos in subsequent centuries in fact increased; ‘*The Communist Manifesto*’, issued by K. Marx and F. Engels in 1848, and the ‘*The Russell-Einstein Manifesto*’, issued B. Russell and A. Einstein in 1955 to confront the development of weapons of mass destruction, are some of the most famous examples.

Of smaller scope and within the realm of science, there have been several manifestos as well, which have tried to draw the course for the development of particular research areas. These took more the form of declarations of axioms capturing the strategic ideas of a group of people with respect to a certain topic or field. Examples include the following:

- ‘*The Third Manifesto*’, from the book ‘*Databases, Types, and the Relational Model: The Third Manifesto*’ by H. Darwen and C. J. Date, Addison-Wesley, 2007, which proposes new foundations for future database systems<sup>1</sup>.
- ‘*The Object-Oriented Database System Manifesto*’, which describes the main features and characteristics that a system must have to qualify as an object-oriented database system, touching up on mandatory, optional, and even open points where the designer can make several choices<sup>2</sup>.
- ‘*The Manifesto for Agile Software Development*’, which attempts to discover better ways of developing software by putting emphasis on different items than traditionally, e.g., individuals and interactions instead of processes and tools, working software instead of comprehensive documentation, and others<sup>3</sup>.
- ‘*The GNU Manifesto*’, by Richard Stallman, which uses as an axiom the idea that “... the golden rule requires that if I like a program I must share it with other people who like it” to produce a complete Unix-compatible software system freely available to everyone who want to use it<sup>4</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.thethirdmanifesto.com/>

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.cs.cmu.edu/People/clamen/OODBMS/Manifesto/index.html>

<sup>3</sup> <http://agilemanifesto.org/>

<sup>4</sup> <http://www.gnu.org/gnu/manifesto.html>

Relevant research and industrial efforts in the Digital Library (DL) field have now reached an advanced, although heterogeneous stage of development, thus the time is right for this field to obtain its own Manifesto.

### **1.1.2 Motivation**

Digital Libraries constitute a relatively young scientific field, whose life spans roughly the last fifteen years. Instrumental in the birth and growth of the field have been the funding opportunities generated by the ‘Technology Enhanced Learning; Cultural Heritage’ (formerly ‘Cultural Heritage Applications’) Unit of the Information Society Directorate-General of the European Commission and the ‘Digital Library Initiatives’ in the United States sponsored by the National Science Foundation and other agencies.

Digital Libraries represent the meeting point of many disciplines and fields, including data management, information retrieval, library sciences, document management, information systems, the web, image processing, artificial intelligence, human-computer interaction, and digital curation. It was only natural that these first fifteen years were mostly spent on bridging some of the gaps between the disciplines (and the scientists serving each one), improvising on what ‘Digital-Library functionality’ is supposed to be, and integrating solutions from each separate field into systems to support such functionality, sometimes the solutions being induced by novel requirements of Digital Libraries. These have been achieved through much exploratory work, primarily in the context of focused efforts devising specialized approaches to address particular aspects of Digital-Library functionality. For example, the ARTISTE project [11] from Europe’s Fifth Framework Programme focused on how to develop an integrated analysis and navigation environment for art images and analogous multimedia content, the COLLATE project [56] from the same Programme focused on how to deal with old film libraries, while the Alexandria Project [7] from NSF’s DLI-1 and DLI-2 Programs focused on geospatially-referenced multimedia material. For the most part, every effort so far has been distinct and, in some sense, isolated from the rest. Every project has started from scratch to build a system supporting the particular needs specified in the project’s description. Nevertheless, looking back at the individual achievements of all the projects, one may see clearly that there is substantial commonality among many of them; the bottom-up development of the field so far has provided enough ‘data points’ for patterns to emerge that can encapsulate all efforts.

Despite the young age of the field of Digital Libraries, it has made a long journey from its initial conception to the present state of the art and has reached a level of maturity that did not exist fifteen years ago. There is substantial knowledge and experience that have been accumulated. This warrants a process of self-declaration that will identify the principle ideas behind the field; it is time for a *Digital Library Manifesto* to set the ground rules for the field and lead to the development of reference documents that will capture the full spectrum of concepts that play a role in Digital Libraries.

As mentioned earlier, the nature of Digital Libraries is highly multidisciplinary. Naturally, this has created several conceptions of what a Digital Library is, each one influenced by the perspective of the primary discipline of the conceiver(s). In fact, Fox et al. [77] observe that the expression “Digital Library” evokes a different impression in each person, ranging from the simple computerisation of traditional libraries to a space in which people communicate, share, and produce new knowledge and knowledge products. For instance, the 1st Delos Brainstorming Workshop in San Cassiano, Italy, envisions a Digital Library as a system that enables any citizen to access all human knowledge, any time and anywhere, in a friendly, multi-modal, efficient, and effective way, by overcoming barriers of distance, language, and

culture and by using multiple Internet-connected devices [110]. An offspring of that activity concludes that Digital Libraries can become the universal knowledge repositories and communication conduits of the future, a common vehicle by which everyone will access, discuss, evaluate, and enhance information of all forms [111][112]. Likewise, in his framework for Digital Library research, Soergel [181] starts from three very different perspectives that different people in the community have on Digital Libraries, i.e., as tools to serve research, scholarship, and education, as a means for accessing information, and as providing services primarily to individual users. He then enhances further each one and fuses them all together to obtain the main guiding principles for his vision of the field. On the other hand, Belkin [20] states that a Digital Library is an institution in charge of providing at least the functionality of a traditional library in the context of distributed and networked collections of information objects. Lesk [140] analyses and discusses the importance of the terms “Digital” and “Library” in the expression “Digital Library”, where the former term mainly implies existence of software for searching text, while the latter term refers to existing material that has been scanned for online access, and concludes that the research effort in the field are not usually associated with the users’ needs. Borgman [32] notices that at least two competing visions of the expression “Digital Library” exist: researchers view Digital Libraries as content collected on behalf of user communities, while practising librarians view Digital Libraries as institutions or services. Kuny and Cleveland [131] discuss four myths about Digital Libraries and attempt to bring them down: (i) the Internet is ‘The’ Digital Library; (ii) at some point there will be a single Digital Library or a single-window view of Digital Library collections; (iii) Digital Libraries are means to provide more equitable access to content from anywhere at any time; and (iv) Digital Libraries are cheaper instruments than physical libraries. They conclude that Digital Libraries impose reinvention of the role of librarians and library models.

In addition to such a variety of perspectives that may currently exist on what a Digital Library is, the concept has evolved quite substantially since the early idea of a system providing access to digitized books and other text documents. The DELOS Network of Excellence on Digital Libraries [60] now envisions a Digital Library as a tool at the centre of intellectual activity having no logical, conceptual, physical, temporal, or personal borders or barriers on information. It has moved from a content-centric system that simply organizes and provides access to particular collections of data and information, to a person-centric system that aims to provide interesting, novel, personalized experiences to users. Its main role has moved from static storage and retrieval of information to facilitation of communication, collaboration, and other forms of interaction among scientists, researchers, or the general public on themes that are pertinent to the information stored in the Digital Library. Finally, it has moved from handling mostly centrally-located text to synthesizing distributed multimedia document collections, sensor data, mobile information, and pervasive computing services.

This vision of Digital Libraries seems to resonate well with the concept of “Information Space” that has arisen from the field of Computer Supported Cooperative Work (CSCW). Snowdon, Churchill, and Frecon [184] have developed future visions about “Connected Communities” and “Inhabited Information Spaces”, with the latter being closely related with the vision of Digital Libraries, in that ubiquitous information is a prerequisite for CSCW. In more detail, Inhabited Information Spaces are “spaces and places where people and digital data can meet in fruitful exchange, i.e., they are effective social workspaces where digital information can be created, explored, manipulated and exchanged”. Thus, “in Inhabited Information Spaces, both information and people who are using that information (viewing it, manipulating it) are represented. This supports collaborative action on objects, provides awareness of others’ ongoing activities, and offers a view of information in the context of its

use”. Based on the above and according to the aforementioned DELOS vision of a Digital Library, the latter provides an Information Space that is populated by a user community and becomes an Inhabited Information Space through CSCW technology. The two fields complement each other nicely, in that one focuses on access and provision of relevant information while the other focuses on visualisation and sharing of information.

It becomes obvious that, as envisioned, “Digital Library” is a complex notion with several diverse aspects and cannot be captured by a simple definition. A comprehensive representation encapsulating all potential perspectives is required. This has led to the drafting of ‘*The Digital Library Manifesto*’, whose aim is to set the foundations and identify the cornerstone concepts within the universe of Digital Libraries, facilitating the integration of research and proposing better ways of developing appropriate systems. Having this broad scope, the Manifesto is followed by a set of separate reference documents, which stand individually but can also be seen as parts of a whole.

The *Manifesto* exploits the collective understanding of Digital Libraries developed by European research groups, including those that are partners in DELOS, and the results of DELOS working meetings (e.g., San Cassiano in 2001, Corvara in 2004, and Frascati in 2006).

The rest of Part I of this volume presents the core parts of this Manifesto and introduces central aspects of the Digital Library framework. It first presents an examination of the three types of relevant “systems” in this area: Digital Library, Digital Library System, and Digital Library Management System (Section I.2). Then, it describes the main concepts characterizing the above systems, i.e., content, user, functionality, quality, policy, and architecture (Section I.3) and it introduces the main roles that actors may play within digital libraries, i.e., end-user, designer, administrator, and application developer (Section I.4). In Section I.5 it describes the reference frameworks that are needed to clarify the DL universe at different levels of abstraction, i.e., the Digital Library reference model and the Digital Library reference architecture. Finally, Section I.6 concludes the Manifesto part.

## I.2 The Digital Libraries Universe: A Three-Tier Framework

A Digital Library is an evolving organization that comes to existence through a series of development steps that bring together all necessary constituents. Figure I.2-1 presents this process and indicates three distinct notions of “systems” developed along the way forming a three-tier framework: Digital Library, Digital Library System, and Digital Library Management System. These correspond to three different levels of conceptualization of the universe of Digital Libraries.

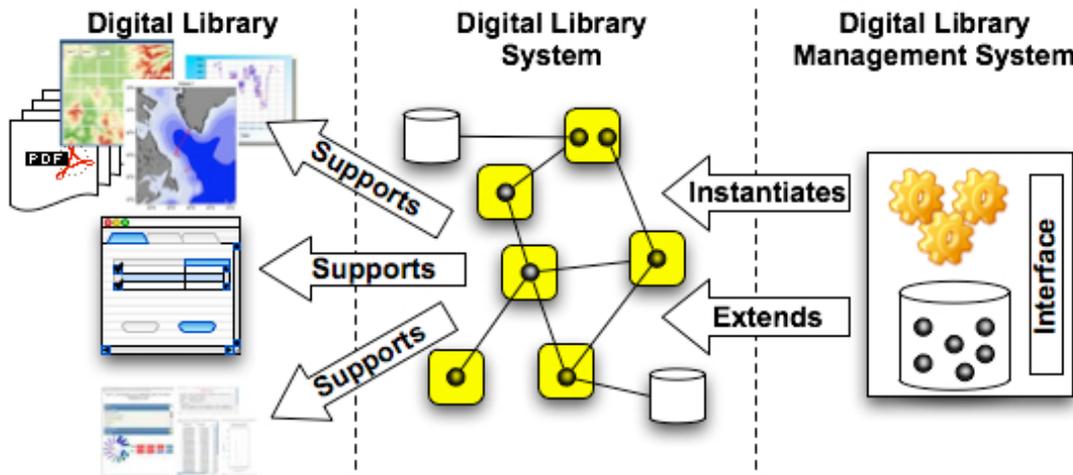


Figure I.2-1. DL, DLS, and DLMS: A Three-tier Framework

These three system notions are often confused and are used interchangeably in the literature; this terminological imprecision has produced a plethora of heterogeneous entities and contributes to making difficult the description, understanding and development of digital library systems. As Figure I.2-1 indicates, all three systems play a central and distinct role in the Digital Library development process. To clarify their differences and their individual characteristics, the explicit definitions that follow may help:

### Digital Library (DL)

*An organization, which might be virtual, that comprehensively collects, manages, and preserves for the long term rich **digital content**, and offers to its **user** communities specialized **functionality** on that content, of measurable **quality** and according to codified **policies**.*

### Digital Library System (DLS)

*A software system that is based on a defined (possibly distributed) **architecture** and provides all functionality required by a particular Digital Library. Users interact with a Digital Library through the corresponding Digital Library System.*

### Digital Library Management System (DLMS)

*A generic software system that provides the appropriate software infrastructure both (i) to produce and administer a Digital Library System incorporating the suite of functionality considered foundational for Digital Libraries and (ii) to integrate additional software offering more refined, specialized, or advanced functionality.*

A Digital Library Management System belongs to the class of “system software”. As is the case in other related domains, such as operating systems, databases, user interfaces, DLMS software generation environments may provide mechanisms to be used as a platform to

produce Digital Library Systems. Depending on the philosophy it follows, a DLMS may belong to one of the following three types:

- **Extensible Digital Library System**

A complete Digital Library System that is fully operational with respect to a defined core suite of functionality. DLs are constructed by instantiating the DLMS and thus obtaining the DLS. Thanks to the open software architecture, new software components providing additional capabilities can be easily integrated. The DelosDLMS [175] is a prototypical example of a system based on this philosophy.

- **Digital Library System Warehouse**

A collection of software components that encapsulate the core suite of DL functionality and a set of tools that can be used to combine these components in a variety of ways (in Lego®-like fashion) to create Digital Library Systems offering a tailored integration of functionalities. New software components can easily be incorporated into the Warehouse for subsequent combination with those already there. BRICKS [37] and DILIGENT [62] are two prototypical examples of systems that are based on this philosophy.

- **Digital Library System Generator**

A highly parameterised software system that encapsulates templates covering a broad range of functionalities, including a defined core suite of DL functionality as well as any advanced functionality that has been deemed appropriate to meet the needs of the specific application domain. Through an initialization session, the appropriate parameters are set and configured; at the end of that session, an application is automatically generated, and this constitutes the Digital Library System ready for installation and deployment. The MARIAN framework equipped with the 5SL specification language represents an example of this process [89].

Although the concept of Digital Library is intended to capture an abstract system that consists of both physical and virtual components, the Digital Library System and the Digital Library Management System capture concrete software systems. For every Digital Library, there is a unique Digital Library System in operation (possibly consisting of many interconnected smaller Digital Library Systems), whereas all Digital Library Systems are based on a handful of Digital Library Management Systems<sup>5</sup>. For instance, through DILIGENT it is possible to build and run a number of DLSs, each realising a DL serving a target community. The DL is thus the abstract entity that “lives” thanks to the software system constituting the DLS.

---

<sup>5</sup> To the extent that it is helpful, one may draw an approximate analogy between the world of Digital Libraries and the world of Databases. A DBMS (e.g., the DB2, Oracle system, MySQL or PostgreSQL) corresponds to a DLMS, offering general data management services. A DBMS together with all application software running on top of it at an installation corresponds to a DLS. Finally, a DL corresponds to a so-called “Information System” that consists of the above software, its data, and its users.

### I.3 The Digital Libraries Universe: Main Concepts

Despite the great variety and diversity of existing digital libraries<sup>6</sup>, in actuality only a limited range of concepts are defined by all systems as core functionalities. These concepts are identifiable in nearly every Digital Library currently in use. They serve as a starting point for any researcher who wants to study and understand the field, for any system designer and developer intending to construct a Digital Library, and for any content provider seeking to expose its content via digital library technologies. In this section, we identify these concepts and briefly discuss them.

Six core concepts provide a foundation for Digital Libraries. Five of them appear in the definition of Digital Library: *Content*, *User*, *Functionality*, *Quality*, and *Policy*; the sixth one emerges in the definition of Digital Library System: *Architecture*. All six concepts influence the Digital Library framework, as shown in Figure I.3-1.

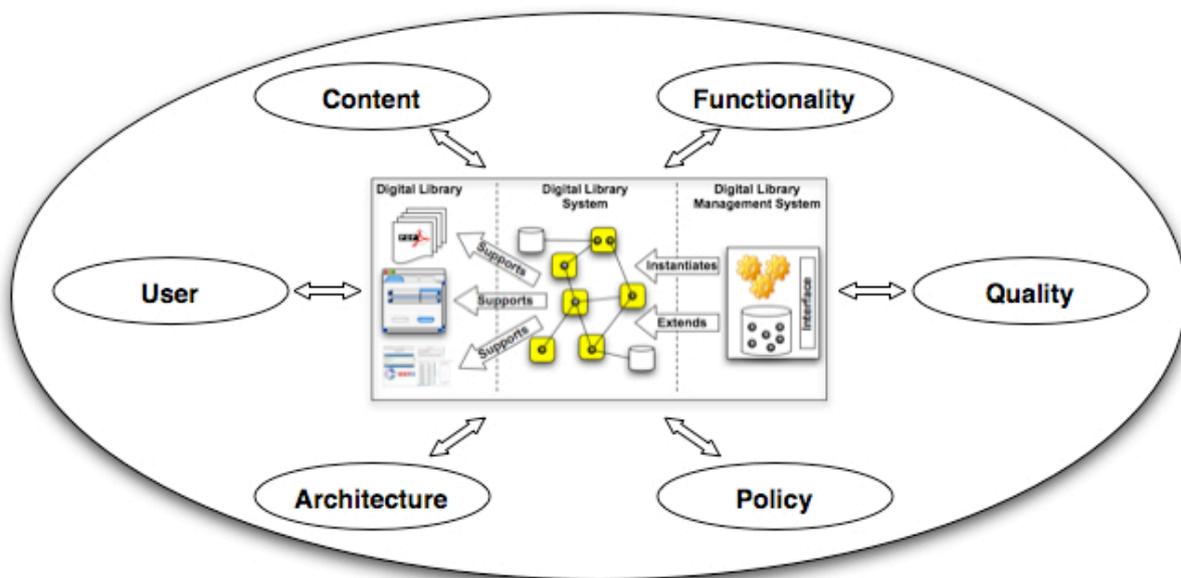


Figure I.3-1. The Digital Library Universe: Main Concepts

#### I.3.1 Content

The *Content* concept encompasses the data and information that the Digital Library handles and makes available to its users. It is composed of a set of information objects organized in collections. Content is an umbrella concept used to aggregate all forms of information objects that a Digital Library collects, manages, and delivers. It encompasses the diverse range of information objects, including such resources as objects, annotations, and metadata. For example, metadata have a central role in the handling and use of information objects, as they provide information critical to its syntactical, semantic, and contextual interpretation.

#### I.3.2 User

The *User* concept covers the various actors (whether human or machine) entitled to interact with Digital Libraries. Digital Libraries connect actors with information and support them in

<sup>6</sup> From here on, we shall use the terms “Digital Library” (or its acronym “DL”), Digital Library System (DLS) and Digital Library Management System (DLMS) to denote the systems identified in Sec.2, while by the term “digital libraries” we shall refer to the whole field of digital library research and applications.

their ability to consume and make creative use of it to generate new information. User is an umbrella concept including all notions related to the representation and management of actor entities within a Digital Library. It encompasses such elements as the rights that actors have within the system and the profiles of the actors with characteristics that personalize the system's behaviour or represent these actors in collaborations.

### **1.3.3 Functionality**

The *Functionality* concept encapsulates the services that a Digital Library offers to its different users, whether classes of users or individual users. While the general expectation is that DLs will be rich in capabilities and services, the bare minimum of functions would include such aspects as new information object registration, search, and browse. Beyond that, the system seeks to manage the functions of the Digital Library to ensure that the functions reflect the particular needs of the digital library's community of users and/or the specific requirements relating to the Content it contains.

### **1.3.4 Quality**

The *Quality* concept represents the parameters that can be used to characterize and evaluate the content and behaviour of a Digital Library. Quality can be associated not only with each class of content or functionality but also with specific information objects or services. Some of these parameters are objective in nature and can be automatically measured, whereas others are subjective in nature and can only be measured through user evaluations (e.g., focus groups).

### **1.3.5 Policy**

The *Policy* concept represents the set or sets of conditions, rules, terms and regulations governing interaction between the Digital Library and users, whether virtual or real. Examples of policies include acceptable user behaviour, digital rights management, privacy and confidentiality, charges to users, and collection delivery. Policies belong to different classes; for instance, not all policies are defined within the DL or the organization managing it. The policy supports the distinction between extrinsic and intrinsic policies. The definition of new policies and re-definition of older policies will be a feature of digital libraries.

### **1.3.6 Architecture**

The *Architecture* concept refers to the Digital Library System entity and represents a mapping of the functionality and content offered by a Digital Library onto hardware and software components<sup>7</sup>. There are two primary reasons for having Architecture as a core concept: (i) Digital Libraries are often assumed to be among the most complex and advanced forms of information systems [78]; and (ii) interoperability across Digital Libraries is recognized as a substantial research challenge. A clear architectural framework for the Digital Library System offers ammunition in addressing both these issues effectively.

The concepts populating all the six area just introduced share many similar characteristics and are all concepts referring to internal entities of a Digital Library that can be sensed by the external world. Introducing a higher-level concept referring to any of them, namely, **Resource**, enables us to reason about these characteristics in a consistent manner.

---

<sup>7</sup> This is an appropriate adaptation of the 'Architecture' definition from the Glossary of CMU's Software Engineering Institute. <http://www.sei.cmu.edu/opensystems/glossary.html>

The six core concepts (Content, User, Functionality, Quality, Policy and Architecture) that lie at the heart of Digital Library universe need to be considered in conjunction with the four main ways that actors interact with digital library systems, as discussed in the next section.

## I.4 The Digital Library Universe: The Main Roles of Actors

We envisage actors interacting with digital library systems in four different and complementary ways: *DL End-Users*, *DL Designers*, *DL System Administrators*, and *DL Application Developers*.

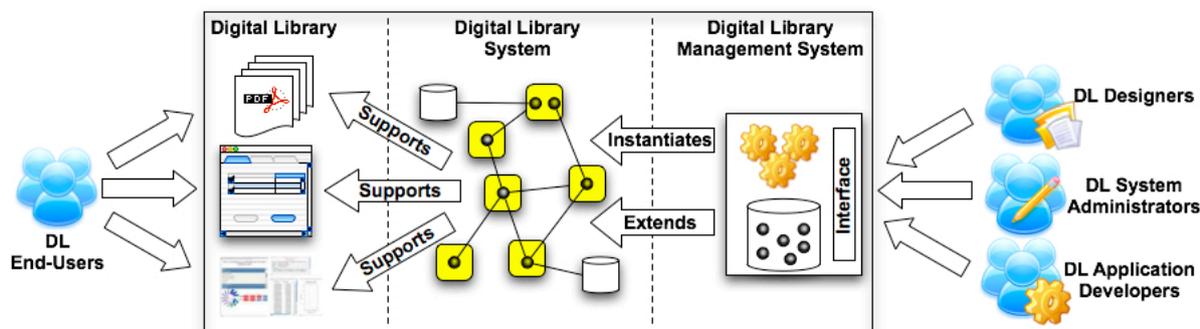


Figure I.4-1. The Main Roles of Actors versus the Three-tier Framework

As shown in Figure I.4-1, each role is primarily associated with one of the three “systems” in the three-tier framework.

### I.4.1 DL End-Users

DL End-Users exploit the DL functionality for the purpose of providing, consuming, and managing the DL Content and some of its other constituents. They perceive the DL as a stateful entity serving their functional needs. The behaviour and output of the DL depend on the DL’s state at the time a particular part of its functionality is activated. The state of the DL corresponds to the state of its resources, which, as we have seen above, consist of the collections of information objects managed by the DL, the set of authorized users, the DL’s functionality, and its set of policies. This state changes during the lifetime of the Digital Library according to the functionality activated by users and their inputs. DL End-Users may be further partitioned into *Content Creators*, *Content Consumers*, and *Librarians*.

### I.4.2 DL Designers

DL Designers exploit their knowledge of the application semantic domain in order to define, customize, and maintain the Digital Library so that it is aligned with the information and functional needs of its potential DL End-Users. To perform this task, they interact with the DLMS providing functional and content configuration parameters. Functional parameters instantiate aspects of the DL functionality that are to be perceived by the DL End-Users, including the characteristics of the result set format, query language(s), user profile formats, and document/data model employed. Content configuration parameters specify third-party resources exploited by the specific DL, e.g., repositories of content, ontologies, classification schemas, authority files, and gazetteers that will be used to form the DL Content. The values of these parameters configure the way the DL will be presented to the DL End-Users, because they determine the particular Digital Library System instance serving the Digital Library. Of course, these parameters need not necessarily be fixed for the entire lifetime of the DL; they may be reconfigured to enable the DL to respond to the evolving expectations of users and changes in all aspects from policies to content.

### I.4.3 DL System Administrators

DL System Administrators select the software components necessary to construct the Digital Library System. Their choice of elements reflects the expectations that DL End-Users and DL

Designers have for the Digital Library, as well as the requirements that the available resources impose on the definition of the DL. DL System Administrators interact with the DLMS by providing architectural configuration parameters, such as the chosen software components and the selected hosting nodes. Their task is to identify the architectural configuration that best fits the DLS in order to ensure the highest level of quality of service. The value of the architectural configuration parameters can be changed over the DL lifetime. Changes of parameter configuration may result in the provision of different DL functionality and/or different levels of quality of service.

#### 1.4.4 DL Application Developers

DL Application Developers develop the software components that will be used as constituents of the DLs, to ensure that the appropriate levels and types of functionality are available.

These four roles described above encompass the whole spectrum of actors interacting with digital libraries. Their models of the DL Universe are linked together in a hierarchical fashion, as depicted in Figure I.4-2. This hierarchy is a direct consequence of the above definitions, since DL End-Users act on the Digital Library, whereas DL Designers, DL System Administrators and DL Application Developers operate on the DLS (through the mediation of a DLMS) and, consequently, on the DL as well. This inclusion relationship ensures that cooperating actors share a common vocabulary and knowledge. For instance, the DL End-User expresses requirements in terms of the DL model and, subsequently, the DL Designer understands these requirements and defines the DL accordingly.

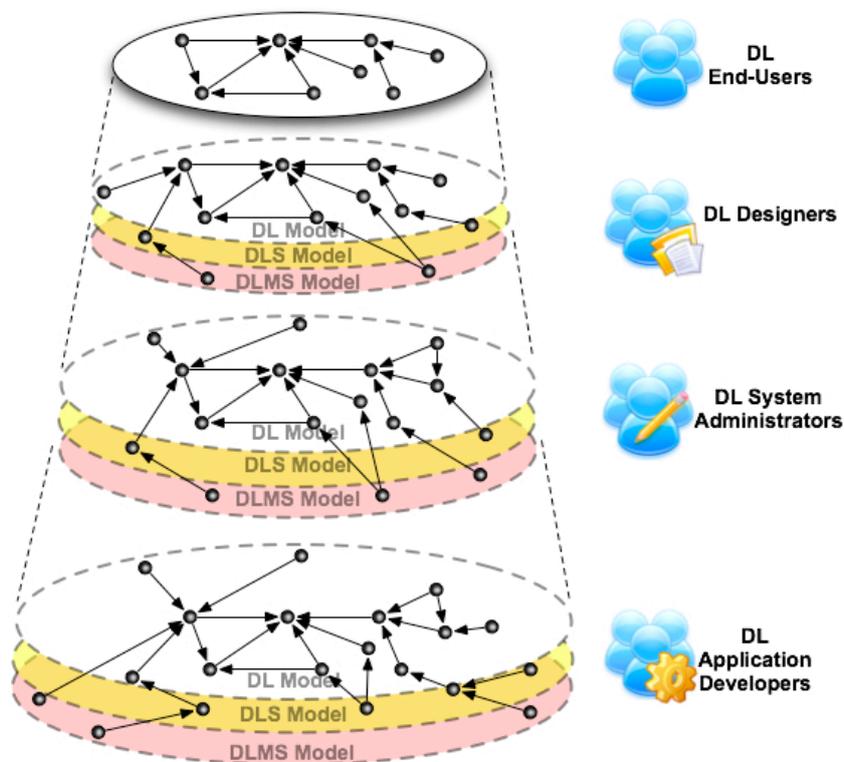


Figure I.4-2. Hierarchy of Users' Views

## I.5 Reference Frameworks

The digital library universe is complex. Thus it comprises multiple elements (see Figure I.5-1) which can better be represented in detail with the introduction of frameworks supporting different levels of abstraction:

- *Reference Model* – As stated in [147], “A Reference Model consists of a minimal set of unifying concepts, axioms and relationships within a particular problem domain, and is independent of specific standards, technologies, implementations, or other concrete details”. Digital libraries need a corresponding Reference Model in order to consolidate the diversity of existing approaches into a cohesive and consistent whole, to offer a mechanism for enabling the comparison of different Digital Library systems, to provide a common basis for communication within the DL community, and to help focus further advancement.
- *Reference Architecture* – The Reference Architecture is an architectural design pattern indicating an abstract solution implementing the concepts and relationships identified in the Reference Model. There may be more than one Reference Architecture that addresses how to design digital libraries systems built on the Reference Model. For example, we might have one Reference Architecture for DLSs supporting DLs constructed by federating local resources and multiple organizations, and another one for personal DLs or for specialised applications.
- *Concrete Architecture* – At this level, the Reference Architecture is actualised by replacing the mechanisms envisaged in the Reference Architecture with concrete standards and specifications. For example, a Concrete Architecture may specify that the run-time environment deployed on the hosting nodes will be CORBA or the Web Services Application Framework, and that a number of specific communicating Web Services will implement the Search functional component.

The relationship of these three frameworks with the general digital library environment is shown in Figure I.5-1. At the top there is the most abstract Reference Model, which guides the more specific Reference Architecture and Concrete Architecture further down. In turn, these should constrain the development and implementation of any actual system. The three reference frameworks are the outcome of an abstraction process that has taken into account the goals, requirements, motivations and, in general, the digital library market, as shown in the left-hand side of Figure I.5-1, and the best practices and relevant research shown on the right-hand side of the same figure. When these frameworks are adopted and followed by the community, the resulting systems will be largely compatible with each other; the interoperability thus afforded will open up significant new horizons for the field.

The rest of this volume focuses on the Reference Model part of this framework.

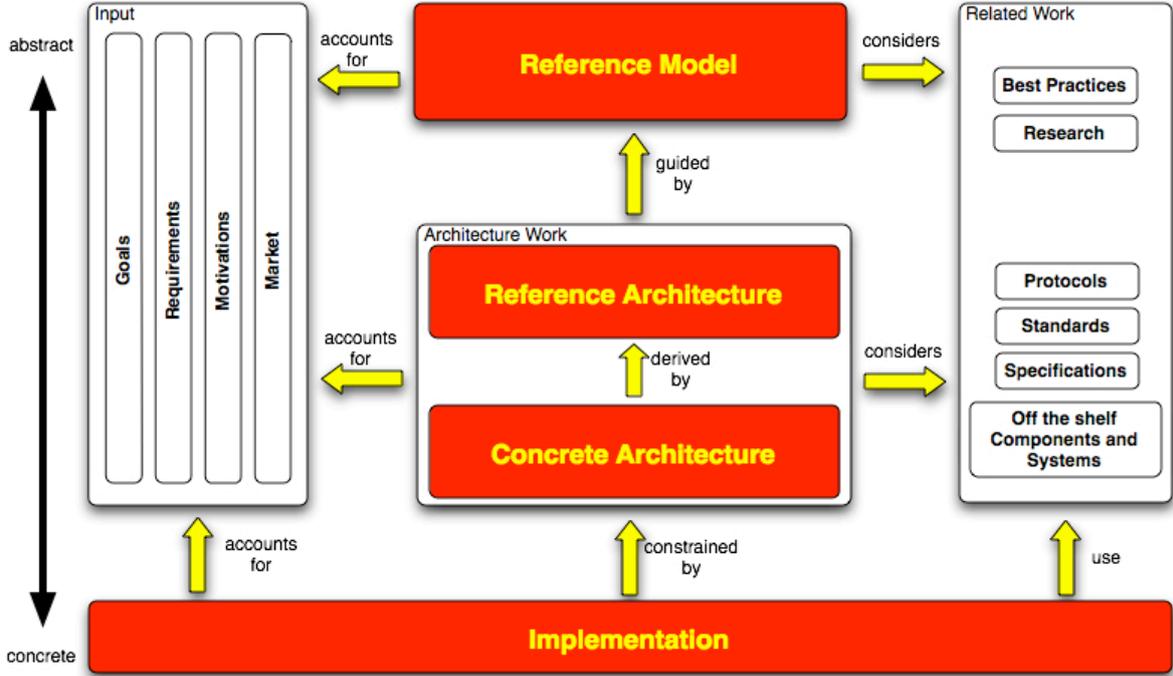


Figure I.5-1. The Digital Library Development Framework<sup>8</sup>

<sup>8</sup> This picture was inspired by the “Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture” document [147].

## **I.6 Digital Library Manifesto: Conclusions**

The rest of this volume focuses on the Reference Model part of this framework.

The goal of ‘*The Digital Library Manifesto*’ has been to set the foundations and identify the entities of discourse within the universe of digital libraries. It has introduced the relationships among three kinds of relevant “systems” in this area: Digital Library, Digital Library System, and Digital Library Management System. It has presented the main concepts characterising the above, i.e., content, user, functionality, quality, policy, and architecture, and has identified the main roles that actors may play within a digital library, i.e., end-user, designer, administrator, and application developer. Finally, it has described the reference frameworks that are needed to clarify the digital library universe at different detailed levels of abstraction, i.e., the Reference Model and the Reference and Concrete Architectures.

‘*The Digital Library Manifesto*’ is currently accompanied by two other documents, which provide, respectively, a high level overview and a more detailed definition of the concepts and relationships required to capture the complex DL Universe. These documents come as a attempt to fulfil the foundational needs of the DL field. Clearly, diversity of needs among different digital libraries will continue to introduce new concepts that will require incorporation into the model. Hence, these documents should be considered as first versions of dynamic documents that will keep evolving, having the Manifesto as a firm foundation.

The ‘*Digital Library Manifesto*’ has been based on the experience and knowledge gained by many previous efforts that have gone on for the past fifteen years around Europe and the rest of the world. We hope it will serve as a basis for new advances in research and system development in the future.

## **PART II The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model in a Nutshell**

## II.1 Introduction

Despite the large number of “systems” that are named “digital libraries” [32][111][112][131][77][78] (where “system” has to be intended as set of interconnected things forming a whole) there are not yet real underlying foundations for them. This limits the digital library field to grow, as happens for any building to which no appropriate foundation has been provided. Because of this lack it is really difficult or almost impossible to systematize activities for evaluating and comparing digital library systems, teaching and even performing further and focused research. The same holds for system design and development, for promoting sustainable approaches and solutions that aim at maximising the re-use of existing knowledge and assets, and at properly addressing community needs.

In January 2005, the DELOS Networks of Excellence on Digital Libraries [60] decided to initiate the definition of a *reference model* for digital libraries as a necessary step towards a more systematic approach to the research on Digital Libraries. In this context, a reference model is meant as an abstract framework for understanding significant relationships among the entities of some universe, and for the development of consistent standards and/or specifications supporting that universe [147]. The route to reach this objective, summarised below, has been traced in the Manifesto (Part I of this volume).

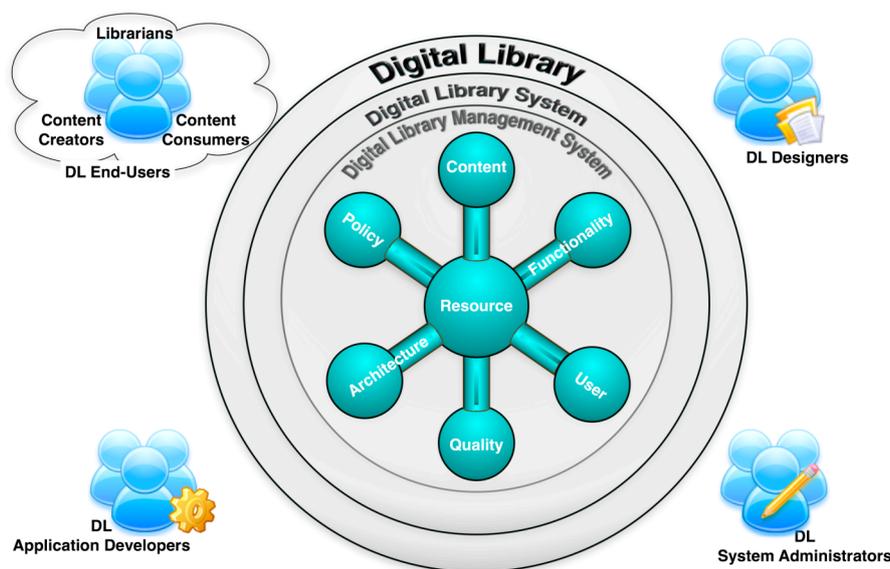


Figure II.1-1. The Digital Library Universe

It is a common understanding that the digital library universe is a complex and multifaceted domain that cannot be captured by a single definition. The Manifesto organises in a single framework the pieces constituting the puzzle (Figure II.1-1).

In particular, it identifies the *three different types of systems* playing in the digital library universe, i.e.,

- (1) the *Digital Library (DL)* – the final “system” actually perceived by the end- users as being the digital library;
- (2) the *Digital Library System (DLS)* – the deployed and running software system that implements the DL facilities; and
- (3) the *Digital Library Management System (DLMS)* – the generic software system that supports the production and administration of DLSs and the integration of additional software offering more refined, specialized, or advanced facilities.

The *Manifesto* also organises the digital library universe in **domains**.

- (1) The *Resource Domain* captures generic characteristics that are in common to the other specialised domains.

Building on it, the model introduces **six** orthogonal and complementary *domains* that together strongly characterise the digital library universe and capture its specificities with respect to generic Information Systems. These specialised domains are:

- (2) *Content* – represents the information made available,
- (3) *User* – represents the actors interacting with the system,
- (4) *Functionality* – represents the facilities supported,
- (5) *Policy* – represents the rules and conditions, including digital rights, governing the operation,
- (6) *Quality* – represents the aspects that are needed to consider digital library systems from a quality point of view, and
- (7) *Architecture* – represents the physical software (and hardware) constituents concretely realising the whole.

Another contribution of the *Manifesto* is recognizing the existence of **various players** acting in the DL universe and cooperating in the operation of the whole. In particular,<sup>9</sup>

- The *DL End-Users* are the ultimate clients the digital library is going to serve.
- The *DL Designers* are the organisers and orchestrators of the digital library from the application point of view.
- The *DL System Administrators* are the organisers and orchestrators from the physical point of view.
- The *DL Application Developers* are the implementers of the software parts needed to realise the digital library.

Further, it states that there is the need for modelling **focused views**. The ultimate goal of the whole reference model activity is to clarify the digital library universe to the different actors by tailoring the representation to their specific needs. The three systems organise the universe in concentric layers that are revealed to interested players only. Meanwhile, the six domains constitute the complementary perspectives from which interested players are allowed to see each layer. Thus the framework is potentially complex because it aims at accommodating all the various needs. However, it is highly modular and can therefore be easily adapted to capture the needs arising in specific application contexts.

Finally, the *Manifesto* gives reason for proceeding with **different levels of abstraction** while laying down the whole framework. These different levels of abstractions, which lead conceptually from the modelling to the implementation, are captured in Figure II.1-2 where the core role of the *Reference Model* is illustrated; all the other elements constituting the envisaged DL development methodology chain depart from it. It drives the definition of any *Reference Architecture* that proposes an optimal architectural pattern for a specific class of digital library systems characterized by similar goals, motivations and requirements. *Concrete*

---

<sup>9</sup> It is still under discussion whether two other players should be added to this list, namely Institutions and Industries. The *Institutions* are meant as organisations, either concrete or virtual ones, having the important role of forming the digital library. The *Industries* are meant as the institutions performing economic activities concerned with the digital library, by providing either the software or the service.

*Architectures* are obtained by replacing the mechanisms envisaged in the Reference Architectures with concrete standards and specifications. Finally, *Implementations*, i.e. the concrete realisation of the DLS supporting a particular DL, are instances of Concrete Architectures deployed on particular machines. The definition of the DELOS Reference Model has thus also to be intended as a necessary starting point towards the introduction of all these other framework elements that once adopted and followed by the community will largely enhance the DL development model and the interoperability among systems.

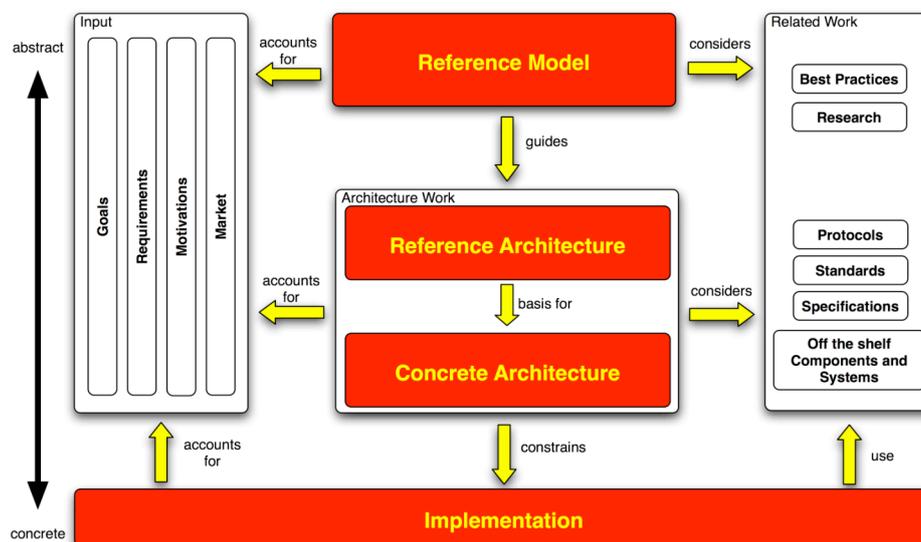


Figure II.1-2. The Reference Model as the core of the Development Framework

The rest of Part II of this volume provides an overview of the DELOS Reference Model by illustrating the constituent concepts and relationships. It is structured as follows. The current section is completed by information setting the stage for the rest, e.g., background material necessary to understand the rest, graphical and notational conventions. Section II.2 introduces the constituent domains of the model, highlighting the main concepts and relationships characterising the domain model rationale. Section II.4 discusses the Preservation issue by presenting the concepts and relations concerning it. Section II.3 presents the Interoperability issue and discusses the main concepts and relations related to it. Section II.5 briefly investigates related work on models for digital libraries and domains. Finally, Section II.6 concludes.

### II.1.1 Motivations

The scope of this section is to shortly state what is meant by a reference model and why it is useful in the area of digital libraries.

In the Information Society Technologies (IST) area, a reference model can be considered an abstract framework that can be used to understand significant relationships among the entities of a specific environment, and for the development of consistent standards or specifications supporting that environment. A reference model is based on a small number of unifying concepts and may be used as a basis for education. A reference model is not addressing implementation details, but it provides a common semantics that can be used unambiguously across and between different implementations.

A Reference Model is useful in a specific IST area, because it is abstract in nature and it can be used by system designers as a template for inventing and designing new software systems, and by final users to interact and use a system in an easier and more effective way.

One significant example of reference model can be considered the Open System Interconnection (OSI) reference model which describes how information from a software application in one computer moves through a network medium to a software application in another computer. The model was developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in 1984, and it is now considered the primary architectural model for internetworking.

In a parallel way, a reference model in the area of Digital Libraries (DL) can be useful for:

- End users of a specific DL since the reference model can help them in more easily identifying appropriate functions and search capabilities;
- Metasearch systems that need to access one or more DL and need to know in what way to interoperate with each DL and what search possibilities each DL offers;
- Administrators who want to match DL functions and reach specific level of performance to satisfy user requirements;
- Investors who want to evaluate a DL;
- Designers and application developers who want to consider design options;
- Students and educators who want to learn and teach about digital libraries and understand the full breadth of their functions.

### **II.1.2 Guide to using the Reference Model**

A Reference Model is a conceptual framework that aims at capturing significant entities and their relationships in a certain universe with the goal of developing more concrete models of it. "Enterprise Architecture" frameworks play a similar role. The aim of the Enterprise Architecture practise is to model the relationships between the business and the technology in such a way that this information can be used to support decisions enterprise wide, e.g., revising the business processes or changing the software systems supporting certain processes. Thus, the Enterprise Architecture must be compared with the whole Reference Model activity while considering the Enterprise Architecture as a decision support process that needs a model capturing a great amount of information. Because of the breadth of information to be covered, both models recognise the need to have a way to categorise this information. The best known Enterprise Architecture framework was devised by Zachman [207]. This framework defines

- (1) different descriptions of the same product (similar to our domains), i.e., *Data* (the *what*), *Process* (the *how*), *Network* (the *where*), *People* (the *who*), *Time* (the *when*), and *Motivation* (the *why*) and
- (2) different views in order to serve the needs of various stakeholders, i.e., scope description (planner's view), business model (owner's view), system model (designer's view), technology model (builder's view), detailed description (implementer's view), actual system (worker's view).

This Reference Model is founded on very similar principles although tailored to address the specificities of the Digital Library universe.

Having clarified this, it is important to note that a plethora of modelling languages exists. They range from the human language to formal ones borrowed from various application domains and characterised by various expressing power and other interesting features, like Entity-relationship [51], UML [29], and Description Logic [15], to cite a few. However, in this document concept maps have been used because of their simplicity and immediateness.

### II.1.2.1 Concept Maps

Concept maps are graphical tools for organizing and representing knowledge [158][159] in terms of concepts (entities) and relationships between concepts to form propositions. Concepts are used to represent regularity in events or objects, or records of events or objects. Propositions are statements about some objects or events in the universe, either naturally occurring or constructed. Propositions contain two or more concepts connected using linking words or phrases to form a meaningful statement. In the graphical representation, concepts are inscribed in circles or boxes while propositions (proposition connectors) are represented as (directed) lines connecting concepts, labelled with words describing the linking relationship. Figure II.1-3 presents an example of a concept map that describes the structure of concept maps and illustrates their main characteristics.

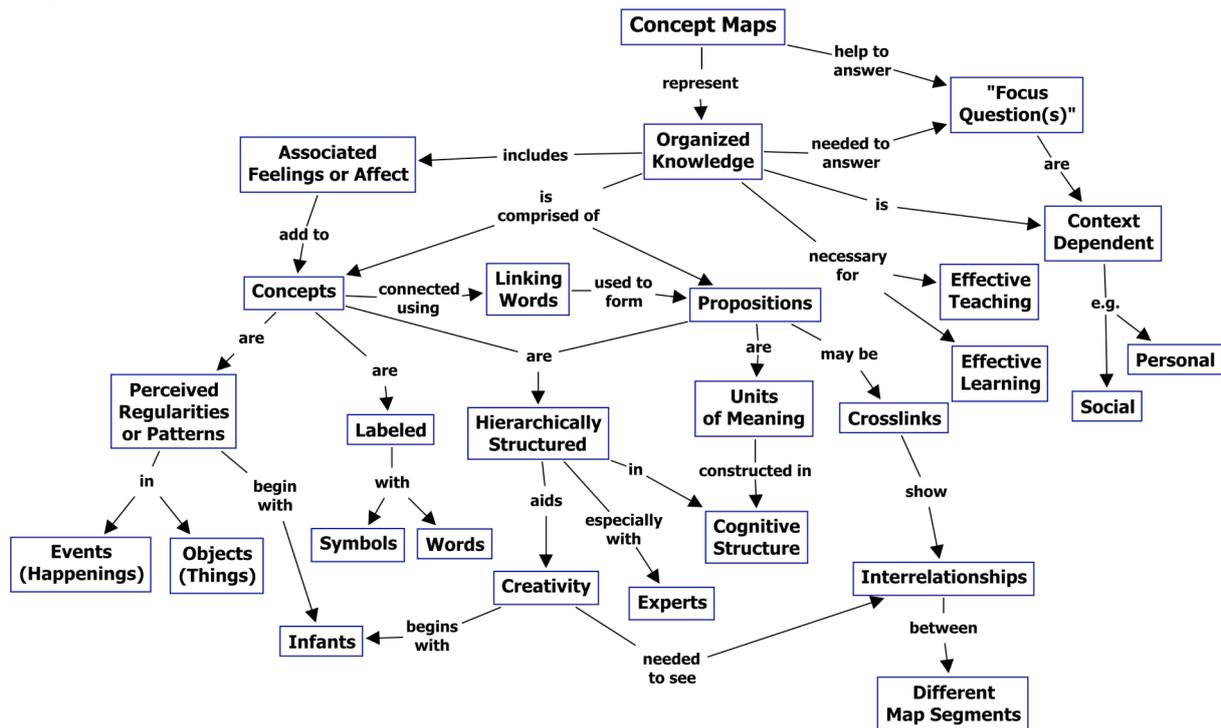


Figure II.1-3. A concept map showing the key feature of concept maps<sup>10</sup>

### II.1.2.2 Notational Conventions

In the following, terms expressing *concepts*, i.e. constituent entities of the Reference Model, are typed in **bold** at their first occurrence in the document and in *italic* in the rest of the document. Terms expressing *relations* in the Reference Model are typed in *<italic with angle brackets>* at their occurrence in the document.

<sup>10</sup> Figure taken from [159].

## II.2 The Constituent Domains

As outlined in the previous section, the Digital Library universe is complex and multifaceted. Figure II.2-1 presents an organization of the entities of this universe into a hierarchy of *domains*, i.e., named groups of concepts and relations, each modelling a certain aspect of the systems of this universe. In this context domains play a role similar to UML packages and XML namespaces in their respective application areas. Domains may rely on each other and constitute orthogonal areas intended to capture the different aspects of the whole.

Each of the DL “systems” is modelled by entities and relationships captured by these domains at different level of abstraction.

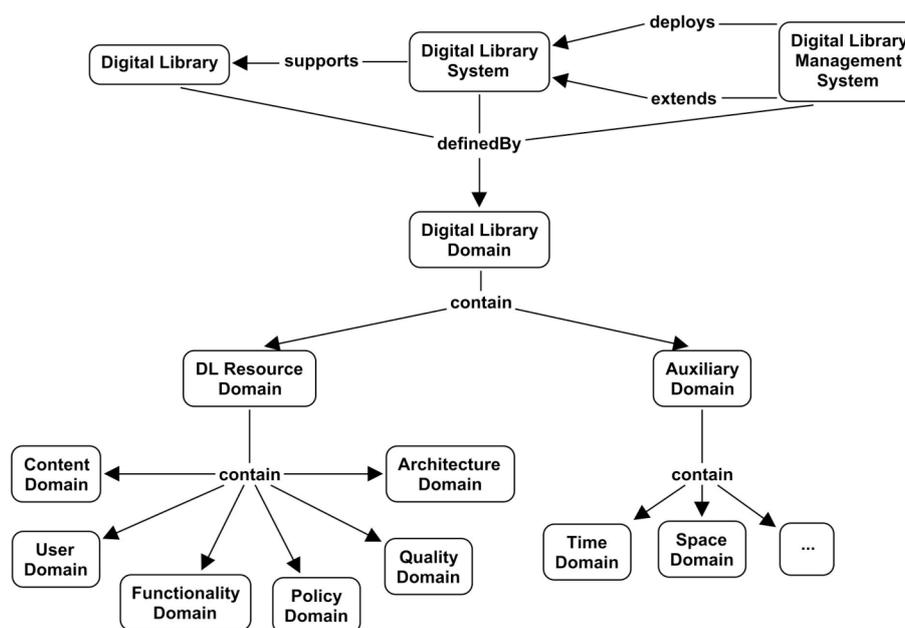


Figure II.2-1. DL Domains Hierarchy Concept Map

The *Digital Library Domain*, which comprises all the elements needed to represent the three systems of the DL universe, is partitioned into two main classes *DL Resource Domain* and *Auxiliary Domain*.

The *DL Resource Domain*, described in Section II.2.1, contains elements identified as “first class citizens” in modelling the digital library universe. It is further specialised in

- (1) *Content Domain* (cf. Sec. II.2.2),
- (2) *User Domain* (cf. Sec. II.2.3),
- (3) *Functionality Domain* (cf. Sec. II.2.4),
- (4) *Policy Domain* (cf. Sec. II.2.5),
- (5) *Quality Domain* (cf. Sec. II.2.6), and
- (6) *Architecture Domain* (cf. Sec. II.2.7),

each of which focuses on a particular aspect of the DL systems.

The *Auxiliary Domain* contains all the other domains that although they do not constitute the focus of the Digital Libraries and can be inherited from existing models, they are needed to represent the systems. This concept serves as a placeholder for domains different from those identified as “first class citizens” and as a hook for future extensions of the model. It includes concepts like

- **Time Domain** (i.e., concepts and relations needed to capture aspects of the time sphere like time periods and intervals);
- **Space Domain** (i.e., concepts and relations needed to capture aspects of the physical sphere like regions and locations).

The rest of this Part II of this volume illustrates the different domains listed above by providing an overview of their concepts and relationships. In approaching models like the one we are presenting here, it is important to keep in mind that these models have not to be intended as “complete” or exhaustive, i.e., capable of representing all the possible facets of the systems in the DL Universe, rather as cores of a model of such a Universe that can be extended by specific communities to include the elements that are required to capture their specific needs.

### II.2.1 DL Resource Domain

The *DL Resource Domain*, being the highest-level domain in our framework, represents all entities and relationships that are managed in the Digital Library Universe. The most general concept of the *DL Resource Domain* is **Resource**, which captures any Digital Library entity (Figure II.2-2). The notion of resource as a primitive concept in a domain is not new. In the context of the Web, for example, resource is the primitive notion of the whole architecture [114]. The Web resource notion has evolved during the Web history from the early conception of document or file to the current abstract definition that covers any entity that can be identified, named, or addressed in the Web. This novel understanding fits very well with the meaning taken by the same term in the Digital Library Universe.

Instances of the concept of *Resource* in the Digital Library Universe are *Information Objects* in all their form (e.g., documents, images, videos, multimedia compound objects, annotations and metadata packets, streams, databases, collections, queries and their result sets), *Actors* (both humans and inanimate entities), *Functions*, *Policies*, *Quality Parameters*, and *Architectural Components*. Each of these instances represents the main concept in their respective domain, thus every *Domain* consists of *Resources* and *Resources* are the building blocks of all the *Digital Library Domains*.

All the different types of *Resources* share many characteristics and ways in which they can be related to other ones (Figure II.2-2). Each *Resource* is

- (1) identified by a **Resource Identifier** (<identifiedBy>);
- (2) arranged or set out according to a **Resource Format** (<hasFormat>) – such a format may be drawn from an Ontology in order to guarantee a uniform interpretation and be arbitrarily complex and structured because *Resources* may be in turn composed of smaller *Resources* (<hasPart>) and linked to other *Resources* (<associatedWith>) as to form compound artefacts;
- (3) characterised by various *Quality Parameters*, each capturing how the resource performs with respect to some attribute (<hasQuality>);
- (4) regulated by *Policies* (<regulatedBy>) governing every aspect of its lifetime;
- (5) expressed by (<expressedBy>) an *Information Object* (such as a *Policy* set down in a text or a flowchart); and
- (6) described by or commented on by an *Information Object*, especially by *Metadata* (<hasMetadata>) and *Annotations* (<hasAnnotation>).

From an organisational point of view *Resources* can be grouped in **Resource Sets** (<belongsTo>), i.e. groups of *Resources* to be considered as a single entity for certain

management or application purposes. Examples of a *Resource Set* in the various domains are *Collection* in the *Content Domain* or *Group* in the *User Domain*.

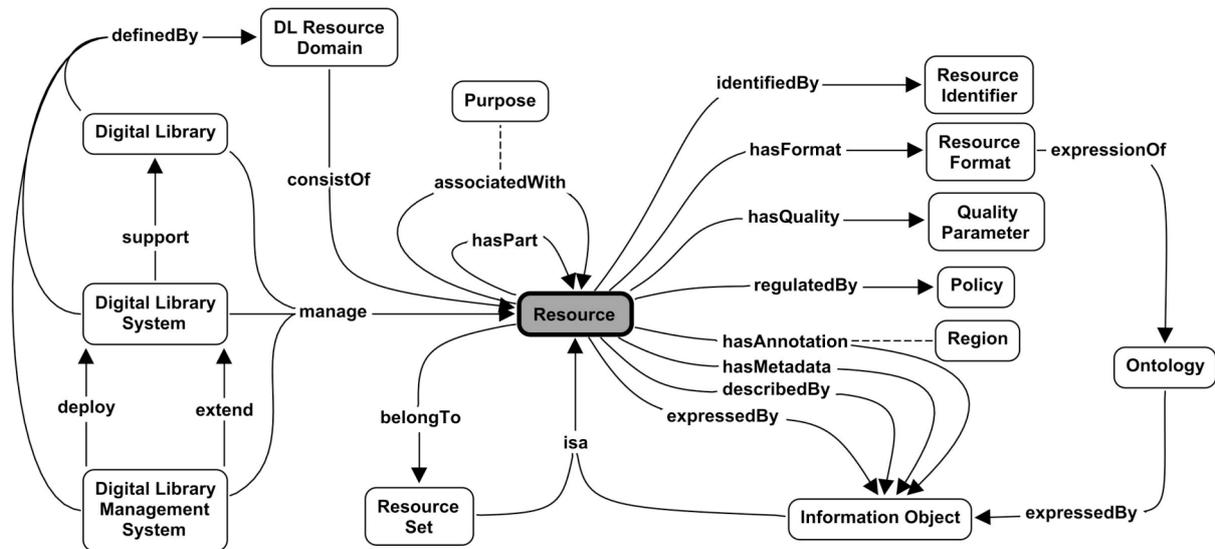


Figure II.2-2. DL Resource Domain Concept Map<sup>11</sup>

Modelling the characteristics shared by all the DL entities at a high level of abstraction and representing more specific entity types by inheriting the shared characteristics down leads to an elegant and concise model, to efficient implementations, and to uniform user interfaces. The advantages of this modelling approach can be transformed in innovative system features and implementations. For example, unified mechanisms for handling relations and functions that apply to all resource types and unified search facilities for seamlessly discovering the various entities available in a DL can be envisaged.

## II.2.2 Content Domain

The *Content Domain* represents all the entities related to the information that Digital Library systems manage in order to satisfy the information needs of its users. The most general concept characterising the *Content Domain* is **Information Object** (Figure II.2-3) which is a *Resource*. An *Information Object* represents any unit of information managed in the Digital Library Universe and includes text documents, images, sound documents, multimedia documents and 3-D objects, including games and virtual reality documents, as well as data sets and databases. *Information Object* also includes composite objects and *Collections* of *Information Objects*. Types of *Information Objects* can furthermore be distinguished by their nature along the following dimensions.

- (1) By the type of data, information, or knowledge contained in the *Information Object*, namely:
  - a. *Information Objects* containing raw data captured directly from the outside world (especially data or data streams captured by instruments). Such raw data often require metadata for proper processing and interpretation.
  - b. *Information Objects* that contain data processed through or generated by the mind or some other system, with the result often called information (as opposed to raw data) or knowledge.

<sup>11</sup> A Concept linked to a Relation through a dotted line represents an attribute of the Relation itself.

- (2) By the type of information representation or encoding, namely:
  - a. *Information Objects* in which information / knowledge is encoded in natural language and embodied in a document. In a wider sense this includes also pictorial or sound representations.
  - b. *Information Objects* in which information / knowledge is encoded in a formal structure, such as database tables or formal entity-relationship statements. An ontology represented in format terms would fall here.
- (3) By state of digital representation, namely:
  - a. Borne digital information object, such as a borne digital text or a digital camera image.
  - b. A digital information object produced by digitization of a non-digital information object.
  - c. A non-digital information object which may be represented in the digital library by a metadata record.

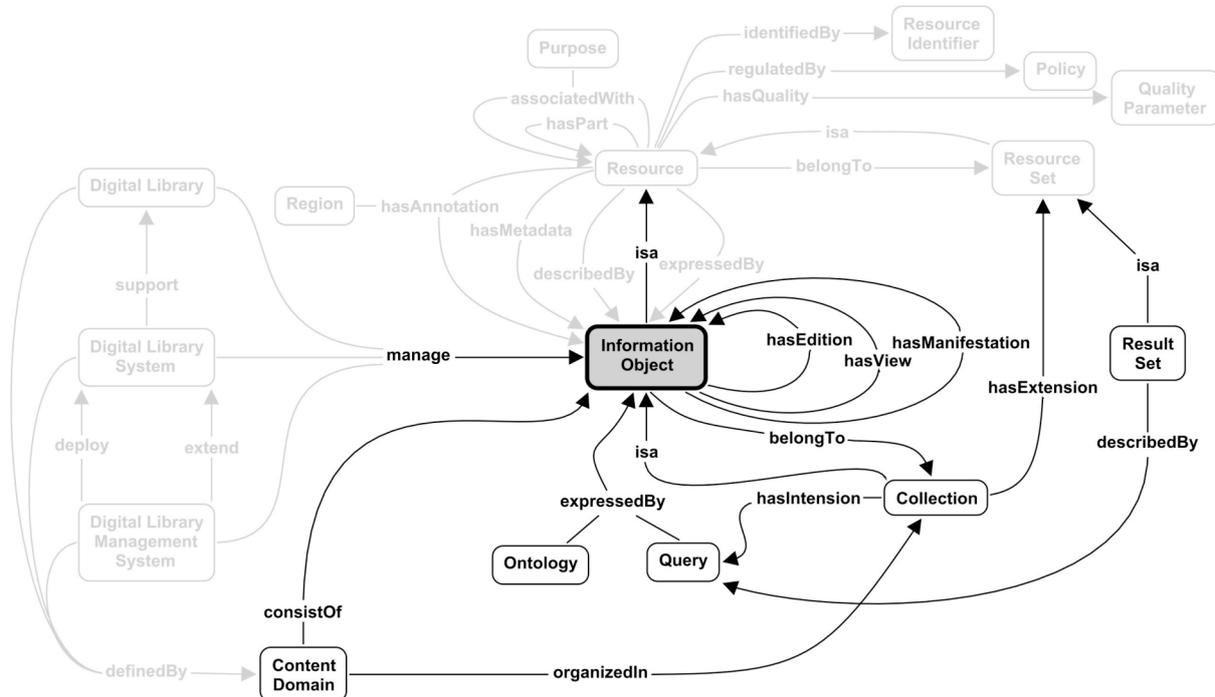


Figure II.2-3. Content Domain Concept Map

As an *Information Object* is a *Resource*, it inherits all its features; namely it

- (1) has a unique identifier (*Resource Identifier*) also known as the information object identifier;
- (2) is arranged according to a format (*Resource Format*) also known as the document model;
- (3) can arbitrarily be composed (<*hasPart*> and <*associatedWith*>) to capture compound artefacts;
- (4) is characterised by various *Quality Parameters* each capturing different object quality facets (<*hasQuality*>);
- (5) is regulated by *Policies* (<*regulatedBy*>) governing every aspect of its lifetime; and
- (6) can be described or augmented by *Metadata* (<*hasMetadata*>) and *Annotations* (<*hasAnnotation*>).

*Information Objects* may acquire a further specialization depending on the level of abstraction at which they are specified. This leads to an abstract **Information object by level of abstraction** concept, which is a container or placeholder to be specialised using any of several models. For example, the IFLA FRBR model [107] distinguishes

- *Work*, for example, the general idea of a story;
- *Expression*, for example, the telling of a story in a text;
- *Manifestation*, for example, the graphic image showing the letters and words that make up the text that is in common to all copies printed from the same typeset image;
- *Item*, for example, an individual printed copy of a manifestation.

Other divisions are possible. In particular, the FRBR distinction between *Work* and *Expression* is hard to apply in the digital world and therefore problematic.

*Information objects* can also be specialized by the predominant role they play in their relationship to other objects; the class **Information object by relationship** is the abstract conceptual container for the classes which these objects give rise to, namely:

- *Primary Information Object*, an *Information Object* that stands on its own, such as a book or a data set.
- *Metadata* object, an *Information Object* whose predominant purpose is to give information about a “target” *Resource* (usually, but not always, a *Primary Information Object*);
- *Annotation* object, an *Information Object* whose predominant purpose is to annotate a “target” *Resource* (or a **Region** of it). Examples of such *Annotation Objects* include notes, structured comments, and links. *Annotation Objects* assist in the interpretation of the target *Resource*, or give support or objections or more detailed explanations.

This modelling style reflects a basic intuition that distinguishes this model from most DL models or *de facto* standards, namely that an *information object* is not born as (say) an *Metadata* or an *Annotation*, but becomes such by virtue of playing a certain role to other information objects. The intuition is grounded on the simple observation that, for instance, a Dublin Core metadata record is to be primarily modelled as a relational structure (record, tuple, graph fragment) which may also be associated to the resource it describes; it is this association that gives the structure the role of metadata. A similar case is for a piece of text; it is primarily a piece of text, and becomes an annotation only when it is linked to a certain *Resource* in a certain way. In other words, the long standing issue whether annotations are content or metadata is just an ill-posed question.

From an organisational point of view, *Information Objects* can be grouped in **Collections** (<*belongsTo*>), i.e. groups of objects considered as a single entity for certain management or application purposes. As *Collections* are *Information Objects* they inherit all *Information Objects*' modelling aspects and facilities, e.g. they can be annotated. Moreover, *Collections* are a specialisation of the *Resource Set* concept. Actually, *Collections* are characterised by an intension (<*hasIntension*>) and an extension (<*hasExtension*>). The former is the criterion underlying the grouping. The way this criterion is expressed can range from the explicit enumeration of all the objects intended to be part of the group to logical expressions capturing the characteristics of the *Resources* intended to be part of the group. The latter is the concrete set of resources (*Resource Set*) matching the intension. These characteristics are implemented differently in diverse systems leading to scenarios ranging from static to highly dynamic ones, e.g. [46].

Another specialisation of the *Resource Set* concept usually associated to the *Content Domain* is the **Result Set**. In traditional digital libraries this is the set of documents that are retrieved by issuing a *Query*. In this context it represents the set of *Resources*, no constraints on their type, resulting from a *Query*.

### II.2.3 User Domain

The *User Domain* represents all the entities that are external to a Digital Library “system” and interact with it, that is: humans, and inanimate entities, such as software programs or physical instruments. The latter may, for instance, include a subscription service offered by a university to its students, which provides access to the contents of an external Digital Library, or even another Digital Library may be among the users of another Digital Library.

Inclusion of hardware and software into the potential users of digital libraries is a major deviation from other Digital Library Models and reflects the breadth of our understanding and conceptualisation as expressed here. In order to capture the extended semantics of the word “user”, we use the concept of **Actor** (Figure II.2-4) As the dominant concept in this domain.

As a *Resource*, the *Actor* concept inherits all key characteristics of the former, i.e., it

- (1) has a unique identifier (*Resource Identifier*) a.k.a. the user identifier;
- (2) is arranged according to a format (*Resource Format*) a.k.a. the user model;
- (3) can be arranged into arbitrarily complex and structured groupings because of the composition (*<hasPart>*) and linking (*<associatedWith>*) resource features, e.g., user co-operations or co-authorships can be captured by instantiating the *<associatedWith>* relations with the appropriate value of the *Purpose* attribute;
- (4) is characterised by various *Quality Parameters* each capturing various quality facets (*<hasQuality>*); For instance, a human may be distinguished by *Authoritativeness* (cf. Sec. II.2.6).
- (5) is regulated by *Policies* (*<regulatedBy>*) governing the aspects of its lifetime, such as the *Functions* an *Actor* can perform and the *Information Objects* they have access to; and
- (6) can be enriched with *Metadata* (*<hasMetadata>*) and *Annotation* (*<hasAnnotation>*), e.g. a particular instance of *Actor* can mark or tag another instance with the characterization “friend”.

An *Actor* is represented in a Digital Library (*<modelledBy>*) via an **Actor Profile** and interacts (*<perform>*) with the Digital Library through a set of *Functions*.

The **Actor Profile** is an *Information Object* that essentially models an *Actor* by potentially capturing a great variety of the *Actor*'s characteristics. This may be important for a particular Digital Library because it allows the *Actor* to use the “system” and interact with it as well as with other *Actors* in a personalised way. It does not only serve as a representation of *Actor* in the system but it essentially determines the *Policies* and *Roles* that govern which *Functions* are allowed on which *Resources* during the lifetime of the *Actor*. For example, a particular instance of *Actor* may be entitled to *Search* within particular *Collections* and *Collaborate* with particular other *Actors* (cf. Sec. II.2.4). The characteristics captured in an *Actor Profile* vary depending on the type of *Actor*, i.e., human or non-human, and may include: identity information (e.g., age, residence or location for humans and operating system, web server edition for software components), educational information (e.g., highest degree achieved, field of study – only for humans), and preferences (e.g., topics of interest, pertinent for both human and software *Actors* that interact with the Digital Library).



which refers to a social group of humans with shared interests. In human *Communities*, intent, belief, resources, preferences, needs, risks and a number of other conditions may be present and common, affecting the identity of the participants and their degree of cohesiveness.

#### II.2.4 Functionality Domain

The *Functionality Domain* represents the richest and most open-ended dimension of the world of Digital Libraries, as it captures all processing that can occur on *Resources* and activities that can be observed by *Actors* in a Digital Library. The most general functionality concept is **Function** (Figure II.2-5), i.e., a particular processing task that can be realized on a *Resource* or *Resource Set* as the result of an activity of a particular *Actor*. It is worth noting that this description of a *Function* is based on the generalized concepts of *Actor*, capturing not only human users but also inanimate entities, and of *Resource*, representing all entities involved into or influenced by a Digital Library, and lends a fresh perspective on the *Functionality* of a Digital Library. While functions in traditional digital library models are typically associated with content in the digital library and are performed by humans, under the new perspective, a *Function* can be exercised by non human users too on any type of *Resource*. For instance, not only a user can *Search* the contents in a digital library, i.e., *Information Objects*, but also an *Actor* can search for other *Actors*, a program can *Search* for offered *Functions*, and so forth.

Each *Function* is itself a *Resource* in this model and thus it inherits all the characteristics of the former, namely

- (1) it has a unique identifier (*Resource Identifier*);
- (2) it can be organised in arbitrarily complex and structured workflows because of the composition (*<hasPart>*) and linking (*<associatedWith>*) facilities, e.g., a compound function resulting by combining smaller sub-functions;
- (3) it is characterised by various *Quality Parameters* covering various quality aspects (*<hasQuality>*);
- (4) its lifetime and behaviour is regulated by *Policies* (*<regulatedBy>*), e.g., which *Actors* are allowed to perform the *Function* in a certain context; and
- (5) it can be enriched with *Metadata* (*<hasMetadata>*) and *Annotation* (*<hasAnnotation>*).

Each *Function* subsumes processes on *Resources* and activities carried out by *Actors* and the supporting processes of the DLS. For example, *Browse* subsumes both the system function of generating a display suitable for browsing and the *Actor* function of browsing this display.

Besides the modelling issues, it is important to recall that the set of *Functions* each of the DL “systems” provides is the direct consequence of its *Actor* expectations. *Functions* concur to realize what is usually called “business process” that is in the service of meeting specific “business requirements” that satisfy a “stakeholder need”. These concepts are borrowed from [139] where they are used to model the concrete business of a DL “system”. These kinds of concepts needed to model the DL business are particularly important but they constitute a typical example of domain modelling that can be “outsourced” to an *auxiliary domain* and thus they will not be further elaborated.

Because of the broad scope of the *Function* concept, it is infeasible to enumerate and predict all different types and flavours of *Functions* that may be included in any Digital Library. Each Digital Library may have its own set of *Functions* depending on its objectives, its intended *Actors*. Therefore, *Function* is specialized into five other concepts that represent still quite general classes of activities, as outlined below (Figure II.2-5).

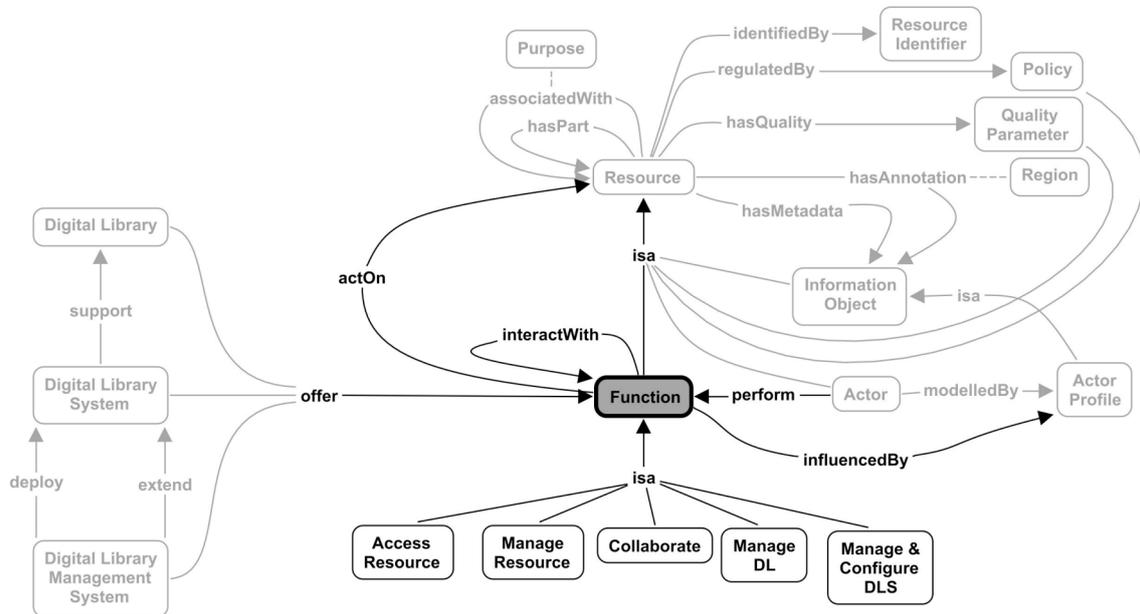


Figure II.2-5. Functionality Domain Concept Map

*Access Resource* captures all activities that are related to requesting, locating, retrieving, transforming, and finally persisting *Resources* (Figure II.2-6). The key characteristic of *Access Resource* concept is that it represents *Functions* that do not modify the Digital Library but help in identifying *Resources* intended to be simply examined and perceived by an *Actor* or possibly further exploited through use of other *Functions*, such as *Manage Resource* functions. Hence, the central *Access Resource* function is *Discover*, which acts on *Resource Sets* to retrieve desired *Resources*.

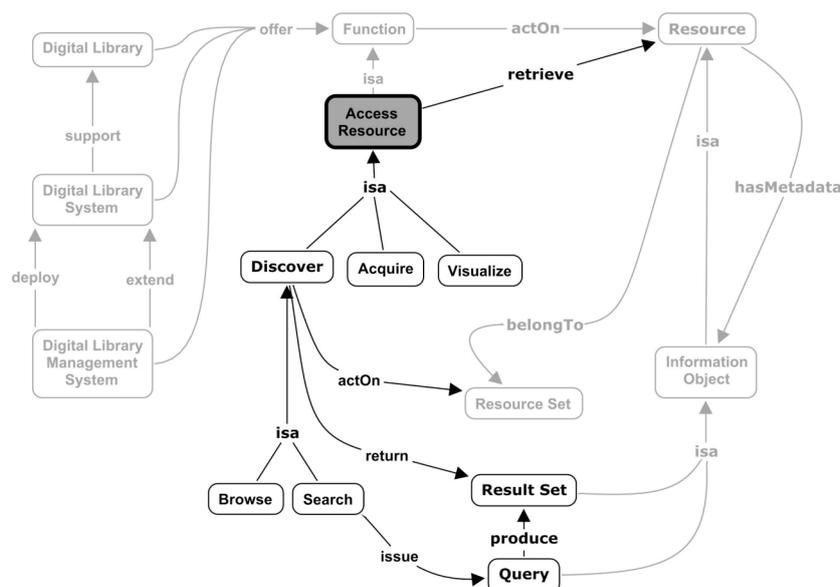


Figure II.2-6. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Access Resource Functions

**Manage Resource** captures all activities that are related to creating new *Resources*, inserting them into the DL, deleting old *Resources* from it, and updating existing ones, as well as applying conversions and transformations on them. This transformation may lead to new *Resources* that may be submitted to the DL or be merely applied when accessing the *Resource*. These may be specialized to individual *Functions* for each resource type (Figure II.2-7).

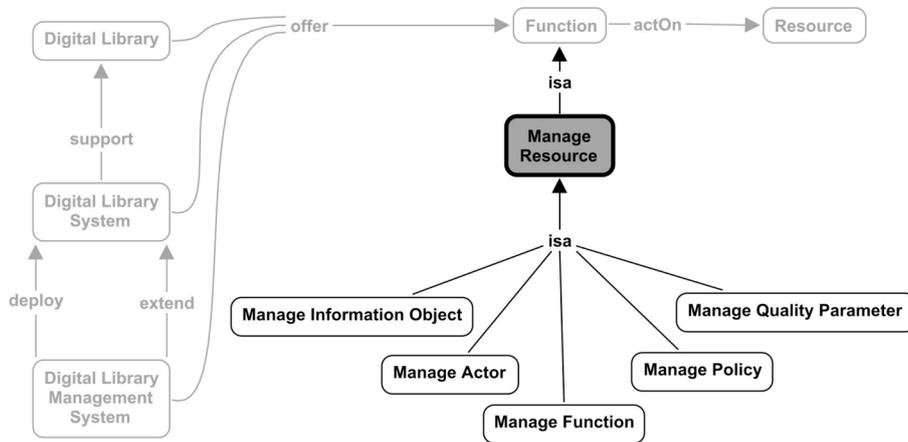


Figure II.2-7. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Specializations of the Manage Resource Functions

Some of the *Functions* may be applied on the *Resources* and others are applied on the *metadata* describing those *Resources*. The general *Functions* that may be applied on all *Resources* are related to the creation, submission withdrawal, update, validation and annotation of *Resources*. Figure II.2-8 presents these general *Functions*. These *Functions* may be specialized for particular Resource types.

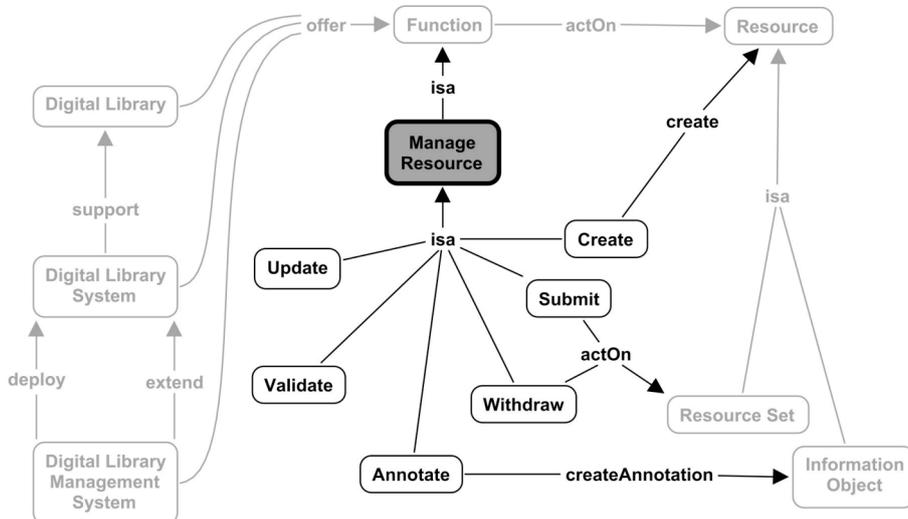


Figure II.2-8. Functionality Domain Concept Map: General Manage Resource Functions Applied to all Resources

**Manage Information Object** (Figure II.2-9) contains *Function* concepts that capture creation, processing and transformation for primary *Information Objects*, which are independent of any other, e.g., **Author**, as well as other concepts that do the same for *Information Objects* that represent other *Information Objects* or *Resources* in general (such as references to others, compositions of others, etc.).

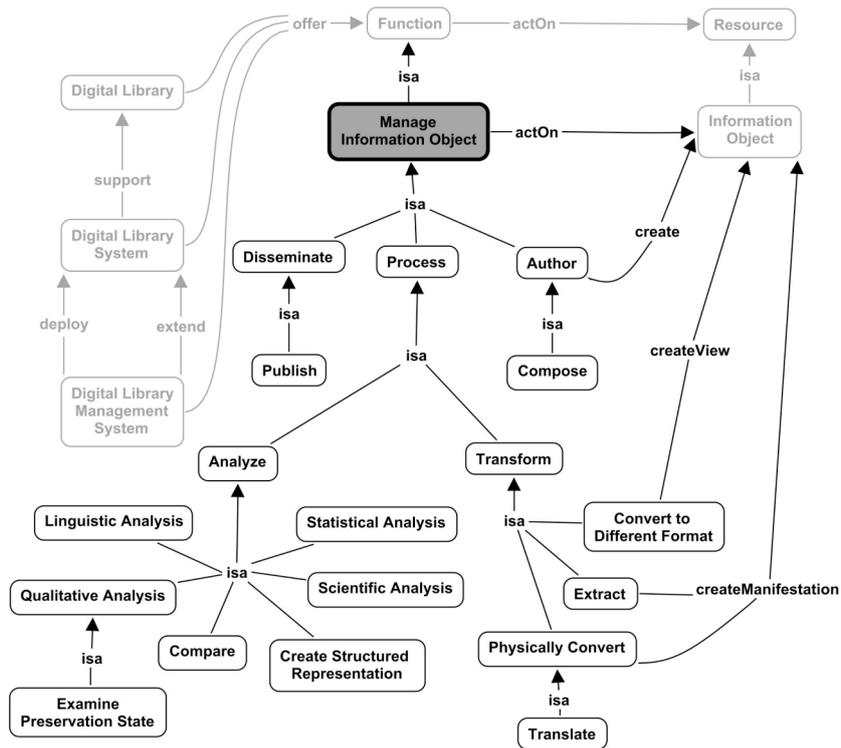


Figure II.2-9. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Information Object Functions

*Manage Actor* contains *Functions* necessary for the management of individual *Actors* in the DL, including their registration or subscription, their login and the personalization of the *functions* they are entitled to (Figure II.2-10).

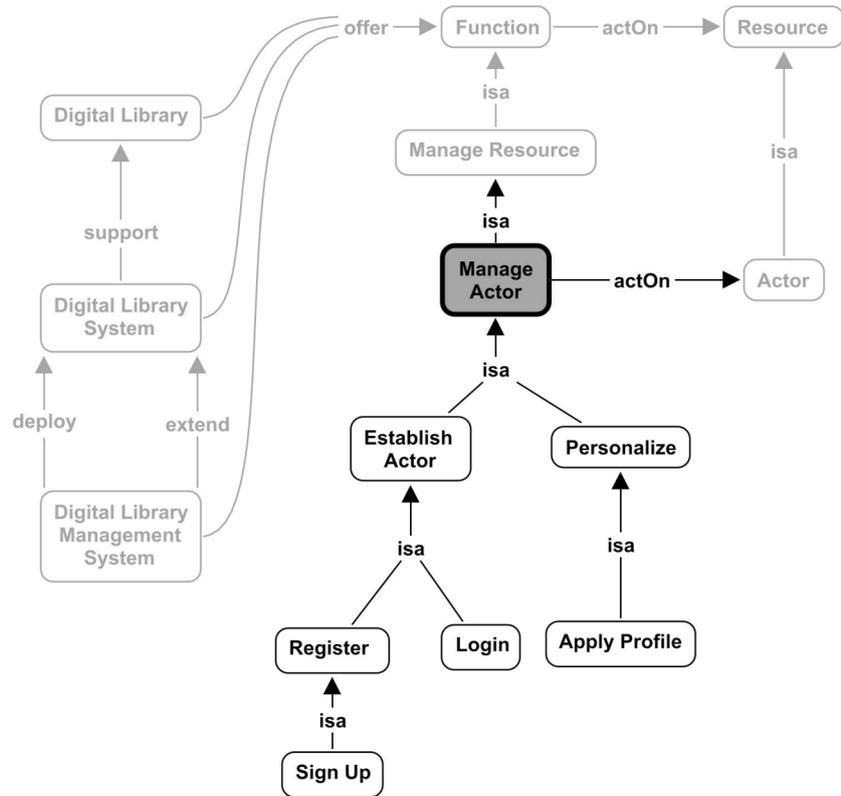


Figure II.2-10. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Actor Functions

The third specialization of *Function* is intimately related to User Domain. It is the **Collaborate** function, which captures all activities that allow multiple *Actors* to work together through a DL to achieve a common goal.

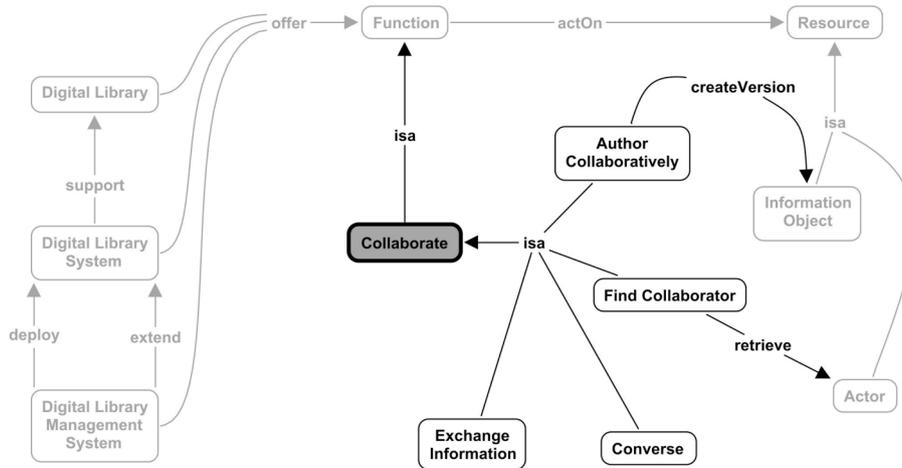


Figure II.2-11. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Collaborate Functions

The other specializations of the *Function* concept capture all activities that are related to the “systems” as a whole and its management.

**Manage DL** includes a wide variety of *Functions* (Figure II.2-12) that support the day-by-day management of the DL, concerning all the DL domains. It includes the management of *collections*, user groups and membership, as well as general management of the policy, quality and functionality domain.

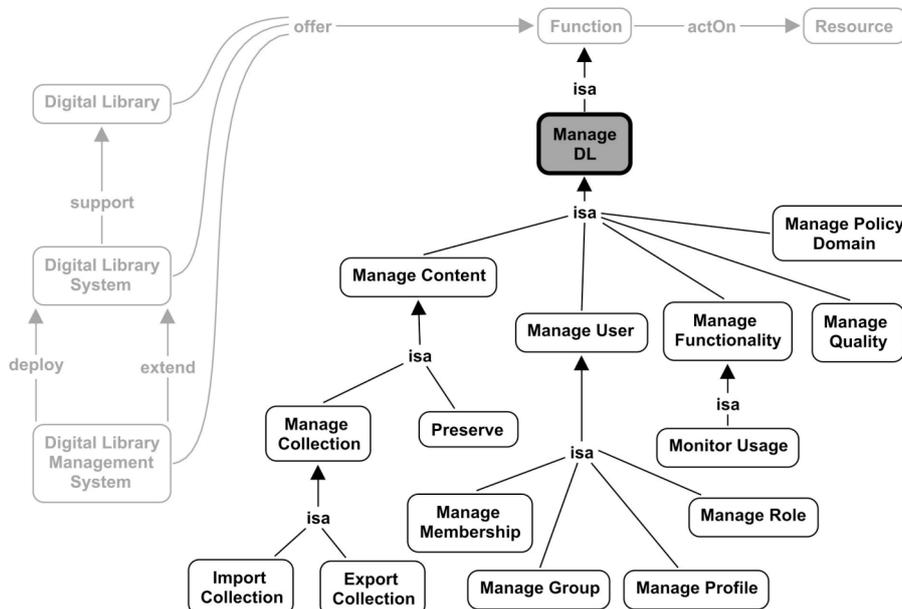


Figure II.2-12. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DL Functions

**Manage & Configure DLS** (Figure II.2-13) contains *Functions* serving the *DL System Administrator* role that has to do with setting up, configuring, and monitoring the DL from a physical point of view, i.e., choosing the particular *Architectural Components* offered by the DLMS to bring the DL (actually the DLS) to an operational state, e.g., **Deploy Architectural Component** or **Monitor Architectural Component**.

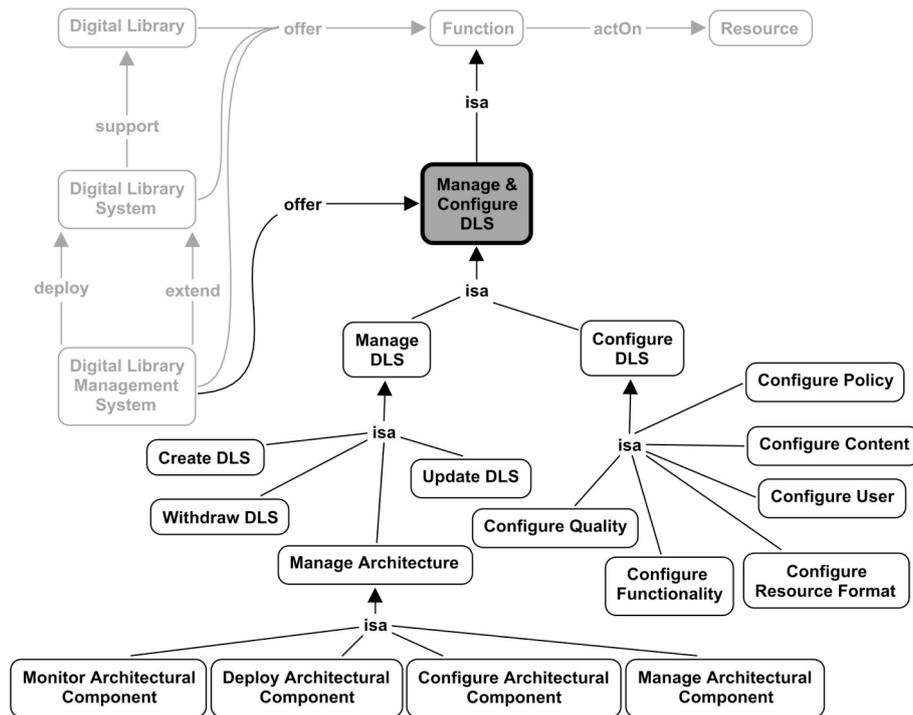


Figure II.2-13. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DLS Functions

As mentioned earlier, the *Functionality Domain* is probably the most dynamic of all fundamental *DL domains*; hence, what is included in the present version of the Reference Model represents only a subset of *Functions* that one may imagine for DLs and corresponds to the concepts that are considered as most critical.

### II.2.5 Policy Domain

The *Policy Domain* represents the set of conditions, rules, terms or regulations governing the operation of Digital Library systems. This domain is very broad and dynamic by nature. The representation provided by this model does not pretend to be exhaustive especially with respect to the myriad of specific rules each Institution would like to model and apply. The Policy domain captures the minimal relationships connecting it to the rest and presents the subset of rules that are considered as most critical in the Digital Library universe. The model is extensible and, should other concepts be needed, they could easily be added to the place they belong to.

The most general policy concept is **Policy** (Figure II.2-14), the single entity governing a *Resource* with respect to a certain management point of view (*<regulatedBy>*). Each *Policy* is itself a *Resource* in this model and thus it inherits all the characteristics of the former, namely

- (1) it has a unique identifier (*Resource Identifier*);
- (2) it can be organised in arbitrarily complex and structured forms because of the composition (*<hasPart>*) and linking (*<associatedWith>*) facilities, e.g., a compound *Policy* can be obtained by properly combining constituent *Policies*;
- (3) it is characterised by *Quality Parameters* covering various quality aspects (*<hasQuality>*), e.g., it is possible to measure the *Interoperability* or *Sustainability* (cf. Sec. II.2.6) of a *Policy*;
- (4) it may itself be regulated by other *Policy* (*<regulatedBy>*), e.g., defining which *Actors* are subject to a certain *Prescriptive Policy* in a certain context; and
- (5) it can be enriched with *Metadata* (*<hasMetadata>*) and *Annotation* (*<hasAnnotation>*).



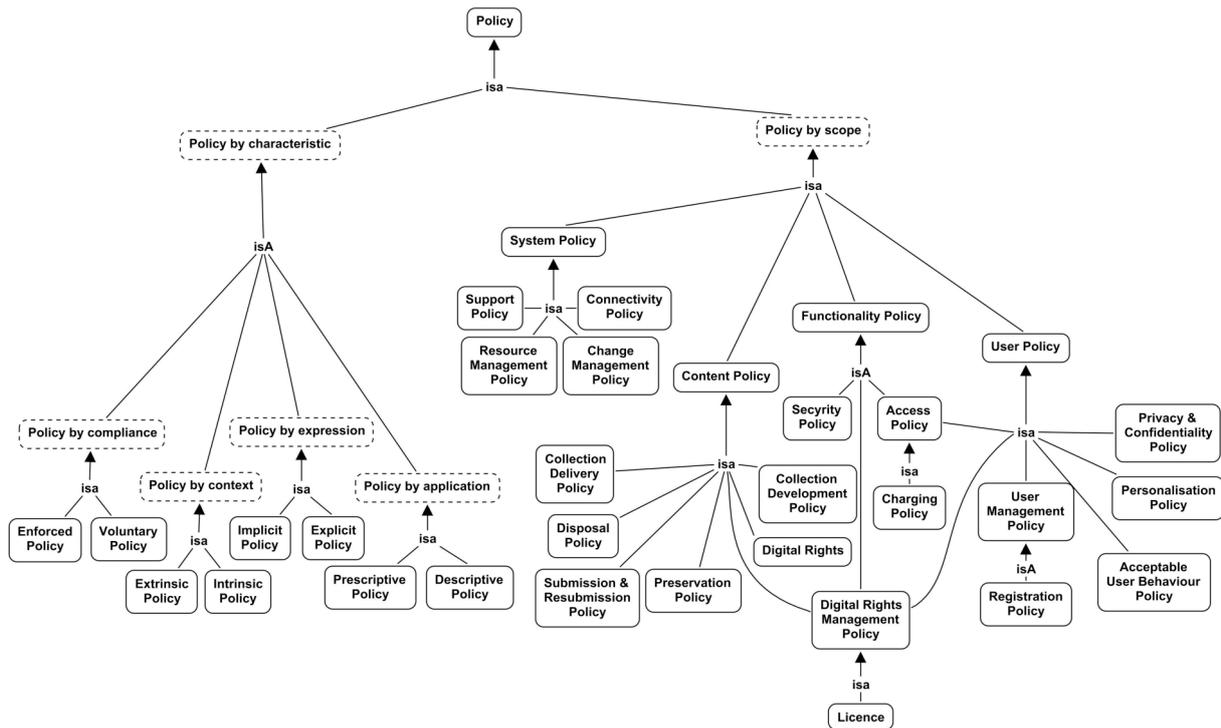


Figure II.2-15. Policy Domain Concept Map: Policies' Hierarchy

From the perspectives of *Digital Library*, *Digital Library System* and *Digital Library Management System*, there is no difference in the perception of the *Policy* concept but there are different the *Resources* on which these systems apply *Policies*. Moreover, the same *Policy* has different materialisations in different systems, e.g., a private *Information Object* in a DL is managed by a DLS service instructed to deliver that object only to the *Actor* that is its owner.<sup>12</sup>

### II.2.6 Quality Domain

The *Quality Domain* represents the aspects that permit to consider digital library systems from a quality point of view, with the goal of judging and evaluating them with respect to specific facets. Any Digital Library “system” tenders a certain level of *Quality* to its *Actors*. This level of *Quality* can be either implicitly agreed, meaning that *Actors* know what *Quality Parameters* guarantee, or explicitly formulated by means of a *Quality of Service (QoS)* agreement.

The most general quality concept is **Quality Parameter** (Figure II.2-16), i.e. the entity expressing the different facets of the *Quality Domain* and providing information about how and how well a *Resource* performs with respect to some viewpoint (<hasQuality>). Indeed, together with the concepts of *Actor*, *Resource*, *Measure*, and *Measurement*, the *Quality Parameter* provides the basic framework for dealing with the issues related to the broad concept of quality. *Quality Parameters* express the assessment by an *Actor*, being it human or not, about the *Resource* under consideration. The *Quality Parameters* can be evaluated according to different *Measures*, which provide alternative procedures for assessing different aspects of each *Quality Parameter* and assigning it a value. *Quality Parameters* are actually

<sup>12</sup> The DLS service is an instance of an *Architectural Component* (cf. Sec. II.2.7) appropriately configured through (and made available by) the DLMS



**Generic Quality Parameters** apply to any kind or most kinds of *Resources*.

**System Quality Parameters** apply to *Digital Library*, or a *Digital Library System*, or a *Digital Library Management System*.

**Content Quality Parameters** apply to *Resources* in the *Content Domain*, primarily *Information Objects*.

**Functionality Quality Parameters** apply to *Resources* in the *Functionality Domain*, primarily *Functions*.

**User Quality Parameters** apply to *Resources* in the *User Domain*, primarily *Actors*.

**Policy Quality Parameters** apply to *Resources* in the *Policy Domain*, primarily *Policies*.

**Architecture Quality Parameters** apply to *Architectural Components*, i.e., *Resources* belonging to the *Architecture Domain* (cf. Sec. II.2.7).

It is important to note that this grouping is made from the perspective of the *Resource* under examination, i.e. the object under assessment. In any case, the *Actor*, meant as the active subject who expresses the assessment, is always taken into consideration and explicitly modelled, since he is integral part of the definition of *Quality Parameter*. Therefore, **User Satisfaction** has been grouped under the *Functionality Quality Parameter* because it expresses how much an *Actor* (the subject who makes the assessment) is satisfied when he/she/it uses a given *Function* (the object of the assessment). On the other hand, in the case of **User Behaviour** the object of the assessment is an *Actor* together with his way of behaving with respect to the *User Behaviour Policy*; for this reason, this parameter has been put under the *User Quality Parameter* group.

There is no fundamental difference in the perception of the *Quality Parameter* concept from the perspective of the *Digital Library*, that of the *Digital Library System* and that of the *Digital Library Management System*. However, each of these “systems” applies this notion from a different perspective, e.g. the *Architecture Quality Parameters* are a peculiarity of the DLS and DLMS. Another difference consists in the fulfilment of the same *Quality Parameters* across the “system” boundaries. For instance, if the DL declares to tender a certain *Quality Parameter* it is a matter of the underlying *Digital Library System* to fulfil this claim while it is a matter of the *Digital Library Management Systems* to provide for the assets needed to guarantee the users expectations, e.g. by implementing the appropriate *Architecture*.

## II.2.7 Architecture Domain

The *Architecture Domain* captures concepts and relationships characterising the two software systems playing an active role in the DL universe, i.e. DLSs and DLMSs. Unfortunately, the importance of this foundational concept has been largely underestimated in the past. Having a clear architectural understanding of the software systems implementing the DL universe offers guidelines and ammunition on pragmatic realisations of a DL as a whole. In particular, it offers insights into:

- how to appropriately develop new systems, by maximising sharing and reuse of valuable assets in order to minimise the development cost and the time-to-market; and
- how to improve current systems by promoting the adoption of suitable, recognisable, and accepted patterns in order to simplify interoperability issues.

The architecture of a “software system” is a concept easily understood by most engineers, system administrators and developers, but it is hardly definable. In “An Introduction to Software Architecture” [83], Garlan and Shaw focus on design matters and suggest that software architecture is concerned with structural issues: “Beyond the algorithms and data structures of the computation, designing and specifying the overall system structure emerges

as a new kind of problem. Structural issues include gross organization and global control structure; protocols for communication, synchronization, and data access; assignment of functionality to design elements; physical distribution; composition of design elements; scaling and performance; and selection among design alternatives". The IEEE Working Group on Architecture [105], however, recognises that there is more than just structure in architecture, and defines it as "the highest-level concept of a system in its environment". Thus, this Group's understanding does not consider the architecture of a software system limited to an inner focus, rather proposes to take into consideration the system as a whole in its usage and development environments.

For the purposes of this reference model, the architecture of a software system (at a given point) is defined as the organization or structure of the system's significant components (**Architectural Component**) interacting with each other (<use>) through their interfaces (**Interface**). These components may be in turn composed of smaller and smaller components (<composedBy>) and interfaces (Figure II.2-17); however, different *Architectural Components* may be incompatible with each other (<conflictWith>), i.e. cannot coexist in the context of the same system. The software industry and the literature when using the term "component" refer to many different concepts. Here, we use the term "component" to mean an encapsulated part of a system, ideally a non-trivial, nearly independent, and replaceable part of a system that fulfils a clear function in the context of a well-defined architecture. Each *Architectural Component* is a *Resource*, thus it inherits the *Resource's* characterising aspects (cf. Sec. II.2.1), e.g., it is uniquely identified. As any *Resource*, components have *Metadata (Component Profile)* which provide fundamental information for managing them. These *Metadata* specify characteristics like the implemented or supported *Functions*, the implemented *Interfaces*, their governing *Policies*, and the *Quality Parameters* that specify the various quality facets describing how and how well the component performs with respect to some viewpoint.

*Architectural Components* interact through a **Framework Specification**; they must also be conformant to it (<conformTo>). This framework prescribes the set of *Interfaces* to be implemented by the components and the protocols governing how components interact with each other.

*Architectural Components* are classified in **Software Architecture Components** and **System Architecture Components**. These classes are used to describe the **Software Architecture** and the **System Architecture** of a software system respectively

*Software Architecture Components* are realised by **Software Components**. Each *Software Component*

- encapsulates the implementation of a portion of a software system (capturing *Content*, *User*, *Functionality*, *Policy* or *Quality Domains* aspects of the DL universe),
- its usage is regulated by (<regulatedBy>) particular *Policies (Licenses)*, and
- it is represented by an *Information Object* (<representedBy>).

Thus, the *Resource* representing the *Software Component* inherits the *Information Object's* characterising aspects (Section II.2.2), e.g. it can be enriched through *Metadata* and *Annotations*.

*System Architecture Components* are realised by **Hosting Nodes** and **Running Components**. A *Hosting Node* encapsulates the implementation of the environment needed to host and run *Software Components*. A *Running Component* represents a running instance of a *Software Component* (<realisedBy>) active on a *Hosting Node*.

Thus instances of *Software Architectural Components* and *System Architectural Components* capture the static (set of interacting *Software Architecture Components*) and dynamic (set of interacting *System Architecture Components*) views of the DLS and DLMS systems.

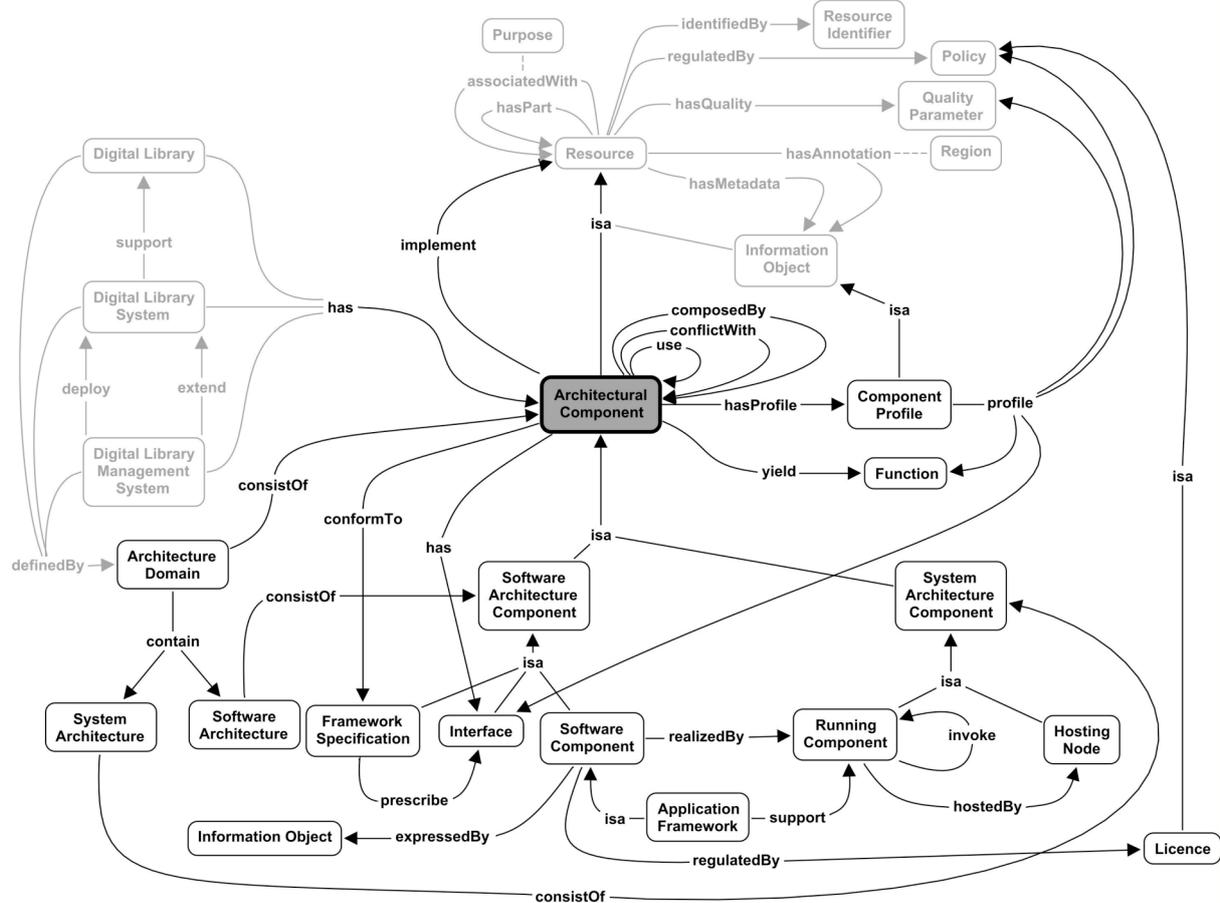


Figure II.2-17. Architecture Domain Concept Map

Even though the *System Architecture* of DLS and the *System Architecture* of DLMS are captured by the same set of concepts and relations, these systems are extremely different and play diverse roles in the DL universe. The aspects distinguishing DLS from DLMS, from the architectural point of view, reside in the concrete set of *Architectural Components* (in particular *Software Components*) constituting such systems. These differences are captured by the Reference Architecture documents, i.e. the Reference Model introduces the terminology to describe the systems while the Reference Architecture must take care of identifying the concrete elements needed to implement an instance of either a DLS or a DLMS.

This modelling subsumes a “component-based approach”, i.e. a kind of application development in which:

- The system is assembled from discrete executable components which are developed and deployed somewhat independently of one another, potentially by different players.
- The system may be upgraded with smaller increments, i.e. by upgrading only some of the constituent components. In particular, this aspect is one of the key points to reach interoperability, as upgrading the appropriate constituents of a system makes it able to interact with other systems.
- Components may be shared by systems; this creates opportunities for reuse that heavily contributes to lowering the development and maintenance costs and the time to market.

- Though not strictly related to their being component-based, component-based systems tend to be distributed.

All these characteristics represent high desiderata of current and future generation of DL “systems”.

### II.3 The Interoperability Issue

Ultimately, the Digital Library Reference Model is intended to deal with the entire spectrum of digital library systems. Whenever two or more systems decide to operate together to better serve their clientele, there arises a scenario where the *interoperability* issue comes up. So far, the reference model focuses on describing and analysing an individual digital library but it is planned to extend its scope in the next phase to address this scenario and the resulting issues. In fact, the modelling of interoperability among digital libraries is a really important aspect to be captured because the topic of making systems able to exploit each other (either as a whole or with respect to some of their constituents, e.g. Content) is fundamental for the development of current and future systems. This section provides initial thoughts on this problem and lists the Reference Model concepts deemed of particular importance for interoperability.

In order to capture the context the interoperability issue arise in, the notion of **Digital Library Space** can be introduced as a specialisation of *Resource Set* to denote a set of resources eventually coming from several digital library systems. Interoperability concerns providing the *Resources* constituting a *Digital Library Space* with a seamless access to the rest of *Resources* in the same space, independently from the Digital Library system they are originating from.

Achieving interoperability requires a clear and detailed understanding of the participating entities. The Reference Model provides a framework for describing and understanding digital libraries in such a way that they can be easily compared and commonalities and differences easily identified. This then leads to an assessment of interoperability problems (an interoperability audit) as the basis for a plan for achieving interoperability. By approaching the interoperability problem through the Reference Model, for example, it becomes clear that its solution does not depend, as usually intended, only on metadata, protocols and few other aspects. As a matter of fact, interoperability is a multidimensional property that applies to the resources of all the different digital library universe domains, i.e. *Content*, *Functionality*, *User*, *Quality*, *Policy* and *Architecture*. This implies, for instance, that when building a digital library that integrates content from multiple different digital libraries, a developer may not only be concerned with finding out cross-walks between metadata formats but also with many other aspects like, for example, with defining mechanisms that assure that the measures of the content quality parameter *Freshness* are interoperable with the measures of the same quality parameter in the participant *Resources*.

By reasoning on the Reference Model, a notion of “degree of interoperability” within a certain *Digital Library Space* can also be introduced. This degree is based on which concepts and relationships are interoperable in the Digital Library Space. A digital library can be classified as being interoperable with another one, for example, at the level of *ontologies* and/or at the level of *Information Object*. The latter one indicates a higher interoperability degree since it subsumes the former.

Alternative degree of interoperability are often put in place. For instance, in the case of search across multiple data sources provided by diverse organisations (digital libraries), usually three different approaches, characterised by different level of engagement of the sources, are realised: the federated, the harvesting, and the gathering approach. In the federated approach the partaking organisations agree on a set of protocols and standards to be applied in delivering the search, e.g. each source implements the SRU/SRW protocol because the federation imposes it. In this case the semantic interoperability is at the level of *query* and *result set*. In the case of the harvesting (a notable example is represented by OAI-PMH [134]), the partaking organisations make their content ready to be used by third parties according to a certain standard. Thus no imposition comes from the potential consumers. Here semantic

interoperability is usually based on the use of a common *ontology*, e.g. Dublin Core. The latter case, i.e., the gathering approach, is the less demanding among the three. In this case no source takes care of its potential consumers because the exposition of its content so that it can easily be used by third parties is not a requirement; i.e., in this case the *resources* are not required to be interoperable.

The Interoperability issue has many commonalities with preservation and multilinguality. Actually, multilinguality can be seen as interoperability over languages while preservation can be seen as interoperability over time. Syntactic and semantic aspects pervade any form of interoperability. Both these aspects are equally important and customary used to discriminate between the aspects to be bridged. In practice, the semantic interoperability is deemed to be more important and to require more sophisticated approaches than syntactic interoperability. However, semantic interoperability cannot be achieved without reaching the syntactic interoperability.

Among the various concepts reported in the Reference Model the following ones are deemed as particularly important to interoperability:

- **Resource <hasMetadata> Information Object** makes it possible to capture any Metadata for supporting interoperability.
- **Resource <hasFormat> Resource Format** makes it possible to capture the *Resource Format* a *Resource* is compliant with. The notion of format is important for the correct interpretation of a *Resource*. For instance, in order for DL A to use an *Information Object* from DL B, DL A must be able to either deal with that *Information Object*'s format (read it, create displays, etc.) or be able to convert it to a format it can deal with.

*Ontology* with its specialization *Resource Format* is very important for Interoperability. Format specifications need to be preserved so that *Information Objects* using an old format or a previous version of an existing format can still be interpreted. Likewise, the different versions of a subject ontology need to be preserved so that subject *metadata* prepared using a previous version of an *ontology* can be interpreted properly.

- **Resource <associatedWith> Resource** makes it possible to capture the context a *Resource* has originated from. Having this knowledge is important for the correct understanding of the *Resource* meaning. Seeing an *information object* in its original context is important for the correct understanding of its meaning.

The following *functions* are especially important for interoperability

- **Transform**, a specialization of the *Process Function* of *Manage Information Object*. It may include format conversions, information extraction, and automatic translation and summarization techniques. Its specialization **Convert** includes conversion into a different encoding (converting a text from pdf to word, an image to a different format or compression scheme, etc).
- **Import Collection**, a specialization of *Manage Collection*, supports the selection of the third-party information sources whose objects will populate the DL Content or be used as *Resource Metadata*, for example, *Actor Profiles*.
- **Export Collection**, a specialization of *Manage Collection*, supports the export of an entire digital library or pieces of it to create a mirror site or to create a backup copy. Also making *Information Objects*, especially *metadata*, available to be imported by another system (harvesting) is a possible result of this *function*.
- **Compare**, a specialization of the *Analyze Function*, may be used to ascertain whether two instances of an information object are the same.

## II.4 The Preservation Issue

The preservation imperative pervades all aspects of Digital Library systems. This section draws together the Reference Model concepts that are deemed most important for addressing the preservation issue. Preservation applies to all types of *resources* but most importantly to *information objects*. We have specifically chosen to view preservation as embedded within the digital library system.

The working definition of preservation of *Information Objects* this work is based on is the following.

*Preservation aims to*

- *maintain a physically intact instance of a digital entity in the face of deterioration of physical storage media and signals recorded on them,*
- *ensure that the syntax of this digital entity (its encoding and format) can be interpreted and that each subsequent instantiation (e.g. access, rendering, manipulation) is identical to the initial instantiation (e.g., with regard to behaviour, including look and feel, or functionality),*
- *ensure that the semantic meaning of the digital entity is accessible across space and time in the face of technological and cultural change.*

Doing this effectively requires that the provenance and authenticity of digital entities are secured, that their ‘interrelatedness’ is retained, and that information about the context of their creation and use continues to be available. At the most conceptual level, full understanding of an *Information Object* requires knowledge of the cultural context and of the meaning of the representation mechanism, such as term or graphic or sound elements, used by the creator of the object at the time of creation.

Preservation might also be viewed as interoperability over time.

The preservation challenge addressed by this section applies to any form of digital information managed by the digital library system, thus also to information about *Actors*, *Functions*, *Policies*, and to the system as a whole. For some purposes one would like to know and be able to reproduce the state of a digital library system at a particular point of time in the past. This includes in particular the configuration of *Functions*. For example, one might want to be able to reproduce the user interface working three years ago so that a user familiar with that particular interface can still use it. Or a scholar in the future might wish to study how individual or groups of users of the content held by a digital library were accessing that material. Further, one might want to preserve user personalization stored in a *Actor Profile* in the face of changes in the digital library system.

This Reference Model provides the general framework for discussing preservation through the definitions of **Resource** and **Information Object**. It contains the specific concepts and relations necessary to model preservation as listed below:

- **Resource <hasMetadata> Information Object** makes it possible to capture any Metadata, or representation information, necessary to support preservation. Many different kinds of metadata data are needed for preservation. Ideally, *Information Objects* (any *Resource*) would come with metadata sufficient to enable the automation of preservation processes. This includes, for example, the date when an *Information Object* can be destroyed.
- **Resource <hasFormat> Resource Format** makes it possible to capture the format (e.g. characteristics or properties) of an *Information Object* (in general, *Resource*) required if the *Information Object* is to be accessed and understood whether by person or machine. This notion of format can be used to determine when the technology needed for

interpreting the object disappears, and migration to a different format is necessary. The issue of format applies both to primary *Information Objects* and to *Metadata Objects*, which are *Information Objects* as well.

**Ontology** with its specialization *Resource Format* lies at the heart of preservation systems. Format specifications need to be preserved so that *Information Objects* using an old format or a previous version of an existing format can continue to be interpreted. Likewise, the different versions of a subject ontology need to be preserved so that subject metadata prepared using a previous version of an ontology can be interpreted accurately.

- **Resource <hasQuality> Quality Parameter** makes it possible to capture the quality parameters deemed relevant to the preservation issue;
- **Resource <associatedWith> Resource** support the capture of the context an *Information Object* (in general, any *Resource*) originated from. This information facilitates the interpretation of an object in case the context provides critical semantic value.

Moreover, the Reference Model introduces *Functions* that are crucial for preservation, as follows:

- **Transform** – the family of *Functions* through which *Resources (Information Objects)* represented according to a given *Resource Format* are transformed into *Resources (Information Objects)* expressed according to another *Resource Format* improving the capability to transport and interpret them across representation devices and time.
- **Visualize** – the *Function* supporting *Resource (Information Object)* rendering. This should be equipped with facilities for preserving behaviour and functionality of information objects across systems and time.
- **Withdraw** – the *function* making possible to drop *Resources (Information Object)* from a Digital Library system. From a preservation point of view, this *function* should provide for mechanism for deciding whether to maintain the withdrawn object in a secondary store or to completely delete it.
- **export** – the *function* allowing exporting of an entire digital library or pieces of it. This might be done to create a mirror site or a backup copy, or to move a digital library or elements of it to another technological environment. The *Resource* resulting from the execution of this *function* must have a *Resource Format* making itself interpretable and importable by another system.
- **compare** – the *function* that allows a person or a computer program to ascertain the identity or similarity between two instances of an *Information Object* (more generally, a *Resource*). By combining this *Function* with the *Quality Parameters* asserting the *Information Object* (more generally, a *Resource*) probability of being correctly interpreted across time, it will be possible to automate the application of *Preservation Policies*.
- **Configure DL** – For preservation, the system should save the configuration state after any changes are made to it.
- **(actions) logging** – the *function* recording the actions performed on the *Information Object (Resource)* across time. This logging information (that can be considered a kind of *Metadata*) can be used for preservation purposes in different ways, e.g.
  - It allows for rollback operations, e.g. returning an *Information Object* (more generally, a *resource*) to a state it has had at a particular time in the past;
  - It provides for usage history of *information objects* (more generally, a *resource*) which is important as context for later uses.

Two *policies* relate directly to preservation:

- **Preservation policy** that governs the preservation tasks including selection and appraisal of *Resources*.
- **Disposal policy** that governs the de-accession tasks. In the sense that *disposal policy* specifies what should not be preserved it is subsumed under *preservation policy*.

Digital rights also play a significant role in preservation in that they govern what preservation measures can be taken, especially for what concerns the making of backup copies

Among the *quality parameters*, the following ones are of particular importance for preservation:

- Generic Quality Parameters:
  - **Security Enforcement** (cf. Sec. III.3 C157)
  - **Interoperability Support** (cf. Sec. III.3 C155)
  - **Documentation Coverage** (cf. Sec. III.3 C159)
- Content Quality Parameters:
  - **Integrity** (cf. Sec. III.3 C166)
  - **Authenticity** (cf. Sec. III.3 C163)
  - **Authoritativeness** (cf. Sec. III.3 C164)
  - **Performance** (cf. Sec. III.3 C160)
  - **Fidelity** (cf. Sec. III.3 C171)
  - **Dependability** (cf. Sec. III.3 C183)
  - **Provenance** (cf. Sec. III.3 C168)
- Functionality Quality Parameters:
  - **Fault Management Performance** (cf. Sec. III.3 C180)
- Architecture Quality Parameters:
  - **Compliance to standards** (cf. Sec. III.3 C195)

## II.5 Related Work

Several initiatives related to issues discussed in this document have been performed in the past. In the rest of this section we briefly compare this Reference Model with the most representative of them.

### II.5.1 The CIDOC Conceptual Reference Model

The CIDOC Conceptual Reference Model (CRM) [190] is an initiative whose goal is to provide a model, i.e. a formal ontology, for describing implicit and explicit concepts and relationships needed to describe cultural heritage documentation. This activity started in 1996 under the auspices of the ICOM-CIDOC Documentation Standard Working Group and since December 2006 it is an official ISO standard (ISO 21127:2006) [113].

It consists of 81 classes, i.e. categories of items sharing one or more common traits, and 132 unique properties, i.e. relationships of a specific kind linking two classes. Moreover, classes as well as properties are organised in a hierarchy through the “is a” relationship.

The main classes CIDOC reference model classifies the rest are the *CRM Entity*, i.e., the class comprising all things in the CIDOC universe and the *Primitive Value* class, i.e. the class representing values used as documentation elements (*Number*, *String*, and *Time Primitive*). This second class is no further elaborated. The entities of the CIDOC universe are further classified in *Temporal Entity*, i.e. phenomena and cultural manifestations bounded in time and space; *Persistent Item*, i.e. items having a persistent identity; *Time-Span*, i.e. abstract temporal extents having a beginning, an end and a duration; *Place*, i.e. extents in space in the pure sense of physics; and *Dimension*, i.e. quantifiable properties that can be approximated by numerical values.

*Persistent Item* class can be compared to our notion of *Resource* as univocal identified entity (*Resource Identifier*). It is further specialised to form a hierarchy. *Thing* is the direct subclass and represent usable discrete, identifiable, instances of persistent items documented as single units. At this point a complex hierarchy of *things* classes is introduced. In this hierarchy three classes need to be further explained, namely *Conceptual Object*, *Information Object* and *Collection*. A *Conceptual Object* is defined as “non-material product of our minds, in order to allow for reasoning about their identity, circumstances of creation and historical implications”. It shares many commonalities with the IFLA-FRBR concept of Work [107] while its counterpart in the Digital Library Reference Model is the *Information Object*. The CIDOC-CMR *Information Objects* are defined as “identifiable immaterial items, such as a poems, jokes, data sets, images, texts, multimedia objects, procedural prescriptions, computer program code, algorithm or mathematical formulae, that have an objectively recognisable structure and are documented as single units”. The CIDOC *Information Object* concept falls within the concept of *Information Object* of the Digital Library Reference Model. The CIDOC model takes care of complex *Information Objects* through the “*is composed of*” property as well as of rights ownership through the linking between *Legal Object*<sup>13</sup> and *Right*. *Collection* is defined as “aggregation of physical items that are assembled and maintained by one or more instances of Actor over time for a specific purpose and audience, and accounting to a particular collection development plan”. Thus, differently than the Digital Library Reference Model, the CIDOC-CRM only refer collections to physical instantiation of such aggregative mechanism.

---

<sup>13</sup> An *Information Object* is also a *Legal Object*, i.e. a material or immaterial item to which instances of *Right* can be applied.

**Actor**, i.e., people that individually or as a group have the potential to perform actions of which they can be deemed to be responsible, is introduced as specialisation of the *Persistent Item* class. This concept presents many commonalities with the one introduced in the Digital Library Reference Model and presented in Section II.2.2.

Another specialisation of the *Persistent Item* class is **Appellation**, i.e., any sort of identifier that can be used to identify specific instances of all the classes. The two models dedicate a different effort to model this aspect. While the Digital Library Reference Model introduces the concept of *Resource Identifier* without taking care to specialise it the CIDOC-CRM introduces many specialisations ranging from **Object Identifier** to **Address**, **Title**, and **Date**.

Finally, the CIDOC-CRM captures also aspect related to the notion of *Functionality*. In fact, even if its goal is to provide an ontology for modelling cultural heritage information, some of its classes aim at capturing the history and evolution of such information and thus can be considered as a sort of *Functions* objects/information have been subjected to. In particular, the role of the **Activity** class is to comprise “actions intentionally carried out by instances of Actor that result in changes of state in the cultural, social, or physical systems documented”.

### **II.5.2 Stream, Structures, Spaces, Scenarios, and Societies: The 5S Framework**

The 5S framework [88][90] is the result of an activity aiming at defining digital libraries in a rigorous manner. It is based on five fundamental abstractions, namely *Streams*, *Structures*, *Spaces*, *Scenarios*, and *Societies*.

These five concepts are informally defined as follows:

- **Streams** are sequences of elements of an arbitrary type (e.g., bits, characters, images) and thus they can model both static and dynamic content. **Static streams** correspond to an information content represented as basic elements, e.g., a simple text is a sequence of characters while a complex object like a book may be a stream of simple text and images. **Dynamic streams** are used to model any information flow and thus are important for representing any communication that takes place in the digital library. Finally, streams are typed and the type is used to define their semantics and application area.
- **Structures** are the way through which parts of a whole are organised. In particular, they can be used to represent hypertexts and structured information objects, taxonomies, system connections, and user relationships.
- **Spaces** are sets of objects together with operations on those objects obeying to certain constraints. This kind of construct is powerful and, as suggested by the conceivers, when a part of a DL cannot be well described using another of the 5S concepts, space may well be applicable. Document spaces are the key concepts in digital libraries. However, spaces are used in various contexts – e.g., indexing and visualising – and different types of spaces are proposed – e.g., measurable spaces, measure spaces, probability spaces, vector spaces, and topological spaces.
- **Scenarios** are sequences of events that may have parameters and events represent state transitions. The state is determined by the content in a specific location but the value and the location aren't further investigated because these aspects are system-dependent. Thus a scenario tells what happens to the *streams* in *spaces* and through the *structures*. When considered together, the *scenarios* describe the services, the activities, and the tasks representing digital library *functions*. DL workflows and dataflows are examples of scenarios.
- **Societies** are sets of entities and relationships. The entities may be humans or software and hardware components, which either use or support digital library services. Thus society

represents the highest-level concept of a digital library, which exists to serve the information needs of its *societies* and to describe the context of its use.

These concepts are of general purpose and represents low level constructors. Using these concepts, Gonçalves et al. introduced the whole DL ontology reported in Figure II.5-1<sup>14</sup>.

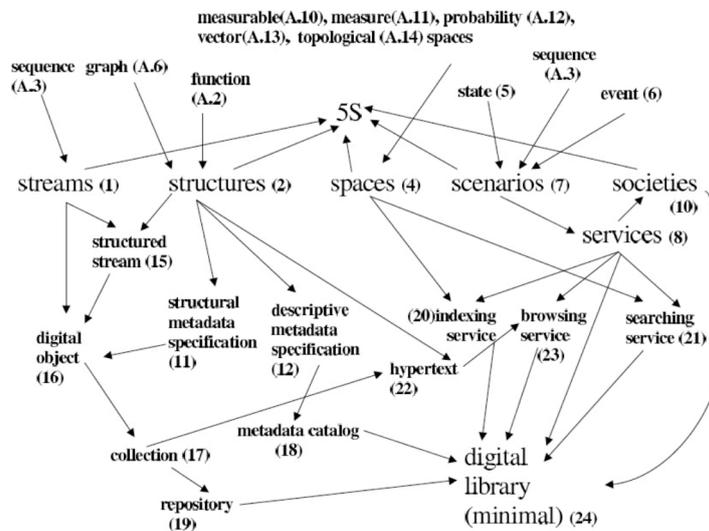


Figure II.5-1. 5S - Map of formal definitions

In accordance with this framework, they define a Digital Library as a quadruple (R,Cat,Serv,Soc) where

- (1) R is a repository, a service encapsulating a family of collections and specific services (get, store, and del) to manipulate the collections;
- (2) Cat is a set of metadata catalogs for all collections in the repository;
- (3) Serv is a set of services containing at least services for indexing, searching, and browsing; and
- (4) Soc is a society.

On top of this a framework aiming at arranging the concepts and identifying the relationships among them has been proposed. It is depicted in Figure II.5-2<sup>15</sup>.

<sup>14</sup> Figure II.5-1 is extracted from [88].

<sup>15</sup> Figure II.5-2 is extracted from [88].

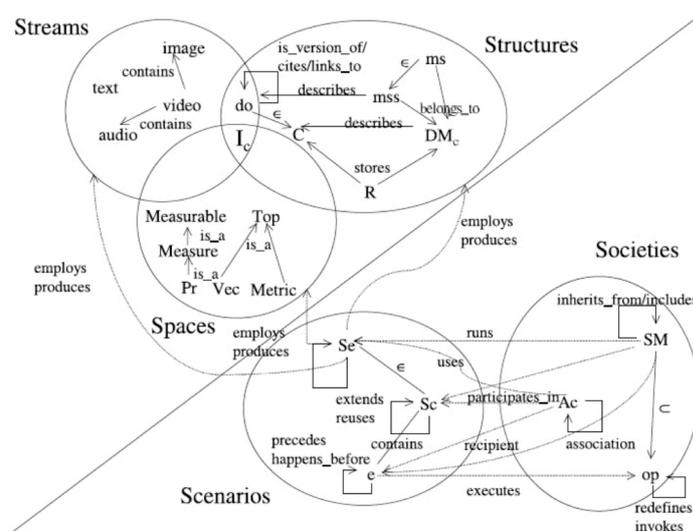


Figure II.5-2. 5S - DL ontology

Despite the commonalities in the goal of the Reference Model and the 5S the proposed approaches presents some differences. The main are:

- The Ss are very general purpose constructs and may result to be less immediate than the pragmatic approach proposed in the Digital Library Reference Model. Moreover, Gonçalves et al. have focused on identifying the “minimal digital library” with the aim to formalize its aspects while the Reference Model focuses on identifying the main concepts and relationships characterising the whole universe considering the formalisation as a future step;
- Differently than the 5S, the DL Reference Model explicitly accommodates the need to provide different perspectives of the same entity, i.e. the digital library, because different users have diverse perceptions of this complex universe as stressed in Section II.1.
- By relying on the concept of *space*, Gonçalves et al. introduced probability spaces, vector spaces, topological spaces, etc. as first-class citizens. The Reference Model deems such concepts too fine grained with respect to the goal of the whole model and decides to leave them out.
- The 5S modelling of services, the counterpart of the Reference Model *Software Components* and *Running Components*, is made in terms of *scenarios* and thus focused on the description of their behaviour. Moreover, service to service co-operating is modelled through the *structure* concept but no specific instantiations are provided. The Reference Model activity plans to produce specific documents dedicated to these sensible aspects, the *Reference Architecture* and the *Concrete Architecture* (cf. Sec. II.1)

Besides these differences, it is also important to notice the similarity arising around the notion of *information object* termed **digital object** in the 5S framework. This probably indicates that the information objects concept has been more investigated and probably better understood than other elements constituting the digital library universe.

### II.5.3 The DELOS Classification and Evaluation Scheme

The DELOS working group dealing with the *evaluation of digital libraries* problem proposed a model [80][81] broader in scope than that usually adopted in the evaluation context. The aim is to be able to satisfy the needs of all DL researchers, either coming from the research community or from the library community.

This group started from a general purpose definition of digital library and identified three non-orthogonal components within this digital library domain: the *users*, the *data/collection*, and the chosen *system/technology*. These entities are related and constrained by means of a series of relationships, namely

- (1) the definition of the set of users predefines the range and the content of the collection relevant and appropriate for them,
- (2) the nature of the collection predefines the range of technologies that can be used, and
- (3) the attractiveness of the collection content with respect to the user needs and the ease of use of the technologies by these users determine the extent of *usage* of the DL.

By relying on these core concepts and relationships it is possible to move outwards to the DL Researcher domain and create a set of researcher requirements for a DL test bed.

Recently [195], this model has been enriched by focusing on the inter-relationships between the basic concepts, i.e. the User-Content relationship is related to the *usefulness* aspects, the Content-System relationship is related to the *performance* attributes, while the User-System is related to *usability* aspects. For each of these three aspects, techniques and principles for producing quantitative data and implementing their evaluation have been introduced.

The Reference Model addresses similar issues through the *Quality* domain (cf. Sec. II.2.6). While the evaluation framework takes care of identifying the characteristics of the DL systems to be measure and evaluated the Digital Library Reference Model introduces this notion at the general level of *Resource*, i.e., each *Resource* is potentially subject to various judgement processes capturing different perspectives.

#### **II.5.4 DOLCE-based Ontologies for Large Software Systems**

DOLCE (Descriptive Ontology for Linguistic and Cognitive Engineering) is a foundational ontology developed to capture the ontological categories underlying natural language and human commonsense. By relying on the basic constructs identified by it a framework of a set of ontologies for modelling modularization and communication in Large Software Systems has been developed [162].

This framework consist of three ontologies:

- (1) the Core Software Ontology (CSO),
- (2) the Core Ontology of Software Components (COSC), and
- (3) the Core Ontology of Web Services (COWS).

The former provides foundations for describing software, in general. In particular it introduces the notions of *Software* and *ComputationalObject* that represent respectively the encoding of an algorithm and the realisation of a code in a concrete hardware. These notions are similar to the *Software Component* and *Running Component* ones envisaged by the Reference Model. In addition to that the CSO ontology introduces concepts borrowed from the object-oriented paradigm like those of *Class*, *Method* and *Exception* and exception that from the Reference Model point of view are considered fine-grained and relegated to *Concrete Architecture* models. This ontology contains also the concepts for dealing with access rights and policies. In particular, by relying on the Descriptions & Situations constructs of DOLCE ontology the concepts of *PolicySubjects* (that can be played by *Users* or *UserGroups*), *PolicyObjects* (that can be played by *Data*), and *TaskCollections* (set of *ComputationalTasks*) are introduced. The former two aspects are captured in a general manner by the Reference Model through the relationship between the *Resource* and the *Policy* concepts, i.e., *<regulatedBy>*, and through the concept of *Role* (and *Resource Set*) with respect to the intuition behind *TaskCollections*.

The *Core Ontology of Software Components* provides concepts needed to capture software components related aspects like libraries and licenses, component profiles, and component taxonomies. The notion of **SoftwareComponent** (having a **Profile** aggregating knowledge about it) is the main entity in this ontology and it is formalised as a *Class* that conforms to a **FrameworkSpecification** (a set of **Interfaces**). Moreover, the notion of **SoftwareLibrary** and **License** completes the scenario by introducing notions for supporting the automatic check of conflicting libraries and incompatible licenses. The similarities with the set of concepts captured by the Reference Model Architecture Domain (cf. Sec. II.2.7) are evident. However, it is important to notice that the way the dependencies between the various components are captured by the Reference Model makes it able to be more flexible with respect to this point.

The *Core Ontology of Web Services* reuses all the other ones to establish a well-founded ontology for Web Services. This is a very specific ontology that captures the component-oriented approach in terms of standards for protocols (SOAP) and descriptions (WSDL). The other interesting feature is to explicit introduction of the **QualityOfService** parameters that in the case of the Reference Model are captured through the general relationship, i.e., *<hasQuality>*, between a *Resource* and its *Quality Parameters*.

## **II.6 Reference Model in a Nutshell: Concluding remarks**

This part of the volume has provided an overview of the DELOS DL Reference Model by presenting the principles governing the identification and organisation of its constituent elements. It has also described the core concepts and relationships that collectively capture the intrinsic nature of the digital library universe. This conceptual framework can be exploited for coordinating approaches, solutions and systems development in the digital library area. In particular, we envision that in the future digital libraries systems will be described, classified and measured according to the key elements introduced by this model.

The presentation has been logically partitioned in seven sections each of which illustrates the concepts and relationships pertaining to one of the core aspects that characterise the digital library systems. Concept maps have been used to graphically represent the concepts and their relations. From the analysis of these maps clearly emerges that despite the complexity of some of the aspects illustrated in most of the cases few powerful aspects are sufficient to capture the essential features.

This DELOS Reference Model in a Nutshell is actually the introductory part of a larger document that presents also the definitions, motivations and exemplifications of the concepts and relationships presented so far. This complementary part is contained into the following PART III The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model Concepts and Relations.

## **PART III The DELOS Digital Library Reference Model Concepts and Relations**

### **III.1 Introduction**

As already stated, a Reference Model is a conceptual framework aiming at capturing significant entities and their relationships in a certain universe with the goal of developing more concrete models of it. Previous sections have outlined the motivation for the creation of the DL Reference Model, as well as an upper level description of its constituents. Conceptual Maps of the Reference Model Domains have been presented and described, providing a brief overview of each Domain concepts, the relations that bind them as well as the interaction between concepts of different domains.

This part of the volume delves more deeply into the Reference Model constituent parts. Concepts and relations are presented in a hierarchical fashion, providing thus an overview of the specialization relations between them. Concept and relation definitions are provided for each of the concepts and relations of the concept maps.

Each concept definition contains a brief definition of the concept, its relations to other concepts, the rationale behind the addition of the concept and an example. Each relation, accordingly, is described by a definition, a rationale and an example.

## III.2 Concepts' Hierarchy

This section presents a more formal description of the model in terms of a hierarchy of classes corresponding to the high level concepts of the current model. This hierarchy does not include the *Domain* concepts that characterise the DL universe. These are a kind of module which have been introduced as a way of structuring the model into easily understandable units.

### C1 Resource

- . C2 Resource Identifier
- . C3 Resource Set
  - . . C4 Result Set (also <isa> Information Object)
  - . . C15 Collection
  - . . C20 Group (also <isa> Actor)
- . C5 Resource Format
- . C16Query
- . C17 Ontology
  
- . [ Content Resource ]<sup>16</sup>
  - . . C7 Information Object
    - . . . [ Information Object by level ]
      - . . . . C8 Edition (see <hasEdition> relation)
      - . . . . C9 View (see <hasView> relation)
      - . . . . C10 Manifestation (see <hasManifestation> relation)
    - . . . [ Information Object by relationship ]
      - . . . . C11 Metadata (see <hasMetadata> relation)
      - . . . . . C12 Actor Profile
      - . . . . . C13 Component Profile
      - . . . . . C14 Annotation
    - . . . C15 Collection
    - . . . C4 Result Set (also <isa> Resource Set)
  
- . [ User Resource ]
  - . . C19 Actor
    - . . . C20 Group (also <isa> Resource Set)
    - . . . . C21 Community
  - . . C22Role
    - . . . C23End-User
      - . . . . C24 Content Consumer
      - . . . . C25 Content Creator
      - . . . . C26 Librarian
      - . . . . C27 DL Designer
      - . . . . C28 DL System Administrator
      - . . . . C29 DL Application Developer
    - . . . C12 Actor Profile (also <isa> Metadata)

---

<sup>16</sup> “Classifiers”, i.e. items added to the hierarchy for organisational purposes are marked [in squared brackets].

- . [ Functionality Resource ]
- . . C31 Function
- . . . C32 Access Resource
- . . . . C33 Discover
- . . . . . C34 Browse
- . . . . . C35 Search
- . . . . . C36 Acquire
- . . . . . C37 Visualise
- . . . . C38 Manage Resource
- . . . . . C39 Create
- . . . . . C40 Submit
- . . . . . C41 Withdraw
- . . . . . C42 Update
- . . . . . C43 Validate
- . . . . . C44 Annotate
- . . . . . C45 Manage Information Object
- . . . . . . C46 Disseminate
- . . . . . . . C47 Publish
- . . . . . . . C48 Author
- . . . . . . . C49 Compose
- . . . . . . . C50 Process
- . . . . . . . C51 Analyze
- . . . . . . . . C52 Linguistic Analysis
- . . . . . . . . C53 Qualitative Analysis
- . . . . . . . . . C54 Examine Preservation State
- . . . . . . . . . C55 Statistical Analysis
- . . . . . . . . . C56 Scientific Analysis
- . . . . . . . . . C57 Create Structured Representation
- . . . . . . . . . C58 Compare
- . . . . . . . . . C59 Transform
- . . . . . . . . . . C60 Physically Convert
- . . . . . . . . . . . C61 Translate
- . . . . . . . . . . . C62 Convert to a Different Format
- . . . . . . . . . . . C63 Extract
- . . . . . . C64 Manage Actor
- . . . . . . . C65 Establish Actor
- . . . . . . . . C66 Register
- . . . . . . . . . C67 Sign Up
- . . . . . . . . . C68 Login
- . . . . . . . . . C69 Personalise
- . . . . . . . . . . C70 Apply Profile
- . . . . . . C71 Manage Function
- . . . . . . C72 Manage Policy
- . . . . . . C73 Manage Quality Parameter
- . . . . C74 Collaborate
- . . . . . C75 Exchange Information
- . . . . . C76 Converse
- . . . . . C77 Find Collaborator
- . . . . . C78 Author Collaboratively
- . . . . C79 Manage DL

- . . . . . C80 Manage Content
- . . . . . C81 Manage Collection
- . . . . . C82 Import Collection
- . . . . . C83 Export Collection
- . . . . . C84 Preserve
- . . . . . C85 Manage User
- . . . . . C86 Manage Membership
- . . . . . C87 Manage Group
- . . . . . C88 Manage Role
- . . . . . C89 Manage Actor Profile
- . . . . . C90 Manage Functionality
- . . . . . C91 Monitor Usage
- . . . . . C92 Manage Quality
- . . . . . C93 Manage Policy Domain
- . . . . . C94 Manage & Configure DLS
- . . . . . C95 Manage DLS
- . . . . . C96 Create DLS
- . . . . . C97 Withdraw DLS
- . . . . . C98 Update DLS
- . . . . . C99 Manage Architecture
- . . . . . C100 Manage Architectural Component
- . . . . . C101 Configure Architectural Component
- . . . . . C102 Deploy Architectural Component
- . . . . . C103 Monitor Architectural Component
- . . . . . C104 Configure DLS
- . . . . . C105 Configure Resource Format
- . . . . . C106 Configure Content
- . . . . . C107 Configure User
- . . . . . C108 Configure Functionality
- . . . . . C109 Configure Policy
- . . . . . C110 Configure Quality
  
- . [ Policy Resource ]
- . . C112 Policy
- . . . [ Policy by characteristic ]
- . . . . [ Policy by context ]
- . . . . . C113 Extrinsic Policy
- . . . . . C114 Intrinsic Policy
- . . . . . [ Policy by expression ]
- . . . . . C115 Explicit Policy
- . . . . . C116 Implicit Policy
- . . . . . [ Policy by application ]
- . . . . . C117 Prescriptive Policy
- . . . . . C118 Descriptive Policy
- . . . . . [ Policy by compliance ]
- . . . . . C119 Enforced Policy
- . . . . . C120 Voluntary Policy
- . . . . . [ Policy by scope ]
- . . . . . C121 System Policy
- . . . . . C122 Change Management Policy

- . . . . . C123 Resource Management Policy
- . . . . . C124 Support Policy
- . . . . . C125 Connectivity Policy
- . . . . . C126 Content Policy
- . . . . . C127 Disposal Policy
- . . . . . C128 Collection Development Policy
- . . . . . C129 Collection Delivery Policy
- . . . . . C130 Submission and Resubmission Policy
- . . . . . C132 Digital Rights
- . . . . . C134 Preservation Policy
- . . . . . C131 Digital Rights Management Policy
- . . . . . C133 License
- . . . . . C135 User Policy
- . . . . . C136 User Management Policy
- . . . . . C137 Registration Policy
- . . . . . C138 Personalization Policy
- . . . . . C139 Privacy and Confidentiality Policy
- . . . . . C140 Acceptable User Behaviour Policy
- . . . . . C141 Functionality Policy
- . . . . . C142 Access Policy
- . . . . . C143 Charging Policy
- . . . . . C144 Security Policy

[ Quality Resource ]

- . . . C146 Measure
- . . . C147 Objective Measure
- . . . C148 Subjective Measure
- . . . C149 Qualitative Measure
- . . . C150 Quantitative Measure
- . . . C151 Measurement
- . . . C152 Quality Parameter
- . . . C153 Generic Quality Parameter
- . . . C154 Economic Convenience
- . . . C155 Interoperability Support
- . . . C156 Reputation
- . . . C157 Security Enforcement
- . . . C158 Sustainability
- . . . C159 Documentation Coverage
- . . . C160 Performance
- . . . C161 Scalability
- . . . C162 Content Quality Parameter
- . . . C163 Authenticity
- . . . C164 Authoritativeness
- . . . C165 Freshness
- . . . C166 Integrity
- . . . C167 Preservation Performance
- . . . C168 Provenance
- . . . C169 Scope
- . . . C170 Size
- . . . C171 Fidelity

- . . . . C172 Perceivability
- . . . . C173 Viability
- . . . . C174 Metadata Evaluation
- . . . C175 Functionality Quality Parameter
- . . . . C176 Availability
- . . . . C177 Awareness of Service
- . . . . C178 Capacity
- . . . . C179 Expectations of Service
- . . . . C180 Fault Management Performance
- . . . . C181 Impact of Service
- . . . . C182 Orthogonality
- . . . . C183 Dependability
- . . . . C184 Robustness
- . . . . C185 Usability
- . . . . C186 User Satisfaction
- . . . C187 User Quality Parameter
- . . . . C188 User Activeness
- . . . . C189 User Behaviour
- . . . C190 Policy Quality Parameter
- . . . . C191 Policy Consistency
- . . . . C192 Policy Precision
- . . . C193Architecture Quality Parameter
- . . . . C194 Ease of Administration
- . . . . C195 Compliance to Standards
- . . . . C196 Ease of Installation
- . . . . C197 Load Balancing Performance
- . . . . C198 Log Quality
- . . . . C199 Maintenance Performance
- . . . . C200 Redundancy
  
- . [ Architectural Resource ]
- . . C202 Architectural Component
- . . . C203 Software Architecture Component
- . . . . C204 Software Component
- . . . . . C205 Application Framework
- . . . . C206 Interface
- . . . . C207 Framework Specification
- . . . C208 System Architecture Component
- . . . . C209 Running Component
- . . . . C210 Hosting Node
- . . C13 Component Profile (also <isa> Metadata)
- . . C133 License (also <isa> Policy)

### III.3 Reference Model Concepts' Definitions

#### C1 Resource

**Definition:** An identifiable entity in the *Digital Library* universe.

**Relationships:**

- *Resource* must have at least one unique *Resource Identifier* (<identifiedBy>)
- *Resource* <hasPart> *Resource*
- *Resource* is <associatedTo> *Resource* for a certain *Purpose*
- *Resource* <hasFormat> *Resource Format*
- *Resource* <hasMetadata> *Information Object*
- *Resource* <hasAnnotation> *Information Object* to a certain *Region*
- *Resource* may be regulated by (<regulatedBy>) *Policy*
- *Resource* may have (<hasQuality>) *Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** In the digital library universe there are entities belonging to diverse and heterogeneous areas and systems that share common modelling attributes and principles supporting their management. These heterogeneous entities are grouped under the concept of *Resource* as it is defined in the context of Web architecture. The Web is intended as an information space in which the items, referred to as resources, are identified by a unique and global identifier called Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). The Resource Model presented here starts from Web architecture and adds domain-specific aspects needed to accommodate digital library requirements. Thus the model allows for the use of Web standards, technologies, and implementations.

The *Resource* concept is abstract, in the sense that it cannot be instantiated directly, but only through the instantiation of one of its specializations.

**Examples:**

- *Information Object*
- *Actor*
- *Function*
- *Policy*
- *Ontology*

#### C2 Resource Identifier

**Definition:** A token bound to a *Resource* that distinguishes it from all other *Resources* within a certain scope, which includes the *Digital Library*.

**Relationships:**

- *Resource* is <identifiedBy> *Resource Identifier*

**Rationale:** Various types of resource identifiers have been proposed, from simple sequential numbers to tokens drawn from more sophisticated schemes, designed to function across *DLs* and time (time is particularly important for preservation purposes). Such persistent identification schemes include URIs, IRIs, ARKs, Digital Object Identifiers (DOIs) and persistent handles. Clearly, each of them has a different discriminating power when considered in the context of digital libraries.

Selecting a Resource Identifying scheme implies a trade-off. Usually, the wider the scope of the scheme, the more costly it is to set up and maintain the scheme. Ideally, the scheme having the widest scope within the acceptable cost range, should be selected.

**Examples:**

- URI
- IRI
- ARKs
- Digital Object Identifier (DOI)
- Persistent handles

### C3 Resource Set

**Definition:** A set of *Resources*, which is in turn a *Resource*, often defined for some management or application purpose.

**Relationships:**

- *Resource Set* <isa> *Resource*
- *Resource* <belongsTo> *Resource Set*

**Rationale:** The grouping of *Resources* is required in many operations of a Digital Library. For instance, in the *Content Domain*, *Collections* are *Resource Sets*, so are search results (*Result Set*) or a subset of the search results marked by an *Actor*. In the *User Domain*, *Groups* are *Resource Sets*.

**Examples:**

- The set of *Collections*, *Functions*, and *Actors* forming a “virtual research environment”, i.e., the set of *Resources* grouped to serve a research need.

### C4 Result Set

**Definition:** A *Resource Set* whose constituent *Resources* are the result of a *Query* execution.

**Relationships:**

- *Result Set* <isA> *Resource Set*

**Rationale:** A set of *Resources* returned by the system as a consequence of an *Actor* that issues a *Query*. *Result Set* are group of *Resources* highly dynamic and time dependant, i.e. different *Result Sets* can be obtained by issuing the same *Query* in different time periods. This is a consequence of the changes in the *Information Objects* and *Collections* made available in the system.

**Examples:**

- The set of *Information Objects* representing Picasso outcomes retrieved by a *Query*

### C5 Resource Format

**Definition:** A description of the structure of a *Resource*. May build explicitly on an *Ontology* or imply an *Ontology*.

**Relationships:**

- *Resource* <hasFormat> *Resource Format*
- *Resource Format* is <expressionOf> *Ontology*

**Rationale:** The schema defines the properties and attributes of a resource and assigns a name to this kind of structure. The resource schema of information objects (a kind of resource)

gives the structural composition of the object; for instance, the objects stored into a Digital Library of Ph.D. thesis might share a common format called “thesis”, defined as an aggregation of multiple parts: the cover page, the preface, a sequence of chapters, images, audio files, and supporting evidence in the form of data stored in a database. For other types of resources, such as users or policies, the schema describes the set of properties or attributes by which the resources are modelled.

We do not make any recommendation on how a schema should be, or which schema best works as “the” schema for a specific kind of *Resource*. From a practical point of view, this leaves space for one of two options: (1) either the developers of a digital library choose some schemas and make them part of the digital library conceptual model; or (2) they leave open the possibility of “plugging in” any schema, in which case a suitable meta-model must be selected for each resource type in order to express the various resource schemas handled by the system; for instance JCR is a suitable meta-model for information objects.

**Examples: --**

## **C6 Content Domain**

**Definition:** One of the six main concepts characterising the digital library universe. It represents the various aspects related to the modelling of information managed in the digital library universe to serve the information needs of the *Actors*.

**Relationships:**

- *Digital Library* <definedBy> *Content Domain*
- *Digital Library System* <definedBy> *Content Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* <definedBy> *Content Domain*
- *Content Domain* <consistOf> *Information Object*
- *Content Domain* <organisedIn> *Collection*

**Rationale:**

The Content concept represents the information that *Digital Libraries* handle and make available to their *Actors*. It is composed of a set of *Information Objects* organised in *Collections*. *Content Domain* is an umbrella concept that is used to aggregate all forms of information that a *Digital Library* may require to offer its services. *Metadata* play an important role in the *Content Domain* because they describe a clearly defined category of *Information Objects* in the domain of discourse.

**Examples: --**

## **C7 Information Object**

**Definition:** The main *Resource* of the *Content Domain*. An *Information Object* is a *Resource* identified by a *Resource Identifier*. It must belong to at least one *Collection*. It may have *Metadata*, *Annotations*, and multiple *Editions*, *Views*, *Manifestations*. In addition, it may have *Quality Parameters* and *Policies*.

**Relationships:**

- *Information Object* <isa> *Resource*
- *Information Object* <hasFormat> *Resource Format* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Information Object* is <identifiedBy> *Resource Identifier* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Information Object* <belongsTo> *Collection*
- *Information Object* <hasMetadata> *Information Object (Metadata)*
- *Information Object* <hasAnnotation> *Information Object (Annotation)*

- *Information Object* <hasEdition> *Information Object*
- *Information Object* <hasView> *Information Object*
- *Information Object* <hasManifestation> *Information Object*
- *Information Object* <hasQuality> *Quality Parameter*
- *Information Object* is <regulatedBy> *Policy*

**Rationale:** The notion of *Information Object* represents the main entity populating the *Content Domain*.

An *Information Object* can be a complex, multimedia and multi-type object with parts, such as a sound recording associated with a set of slides, a music score, political and economic data associated with interactive simulations, a Ph.D. thesis which includes a representation of a performance, or a simulation experiment and the experimental data set adopted, a data stream representing the pool of data continuously measured by a sensor. This information is given in the *Resource Format* linked to the *Information Object* via a <hasFormat> relationship. Thanks to this relationship the mechanism identifying the boundaries and the structure of each *Information Object* is particularly flexible and powerful. For instance it is possible to have a huge *Information Object* representing a soccer game, composed of 27 parts each representing the soccer game gathered by a different camera. Another way is to organize the same soccer game *Information Object* is to have a *Collection of Information Objects*, one for each of the highlights of the match; each of these *Information Objects* can be further decomposed in parts, each representing the highlight as captured by a different camera, etc. Moreover, the notions of *Edition*, *View* and *Manifestation* represent a further way of modelling *Information Objects* according to the semantics fixed by the IFLA-FRBR model [107]. This model is particularly useful in dealing with “document” *Information Objects* but can be extended and applied with profit to any kind of *Information Object*, e.g. the various *Editions* (usually termed versions) of a software product or a data set.

The *Information Object* concept is also part of the CIDOC-CRM [190], where it is used to refer “identifiable immaterial items, such as a poems, jokes, data sets, images, texts, multimedia objects, procedural prescriptions, computer program code, algorithm or mathematical formulae, that have an objectively recognisable structure and are documented as single units”.

The notion of *Information Object* is a complex one, and can be used to capture different concepts. It certainly complies with the notion of “work” in the IFLA-FRBR model, but also with the more concrete notions of *Edition*, *View*, and *Manifestation*, also part of the IFLA-FRBR model.

#### **Examples:**

- The electronic version of this volume along with its *Metadata*

## **C8 Edition**

**Definition:** The *Information Object* representing the realisation along the time dimension of another *Information Object*, to which it is related via a <hasEdition> relationship.

#### **Relationships**

- *Edition* <isa> *Information Object*
- *Information Object* <hasEdition> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** *Editions* represent the different states of an *Information Object* during its lifetime. From a technical point of view, they are defined analogously to *Metadata* or *Annotations*, i.e. as derived concepts from a relation, in this case <hasView>.

An *Edition* is an *Information Object* and thus a *Resource*, therefore it is independent from the *Information Object* it is an edition of.

**Examples:**

- An *Information Object* representing a study may be linked to the following *Information Objects* via *<hasEdition>* relationships:
  - its draft version is an *Edition*
  - the version submitted is an *Edition*
  - the version published in the conference proceedings with colour images is an *Edition*

## C9 View

**Definition:** An *Information Object* representing a different expression of another *Information Object*, to which it is related via a *<hasView>* relation.

**Relationships:**

- *View <isa> Information Object*
- *Information Object <hasView> Information Object*

**Rationale:** This entity represents a view of an *Information Object*. This concept responds to the diversity of expressions of the same object that instantiated using different digital technologies. *Views* do not represent different physical aspects, rather they are mechanisms to differentiate types of representations or visualisations that can be given to the *Information Objects*. The concept of *View* fits very well with those used in the DBMS, in this context a view is a virtual or logical table (i.e. the organisational unit of data) composed as the result of a query over the actual data stored in potentially different table and different ways in order to provide a new organisational unit presenting data in a more useful way.

*Edition* and *View* together capture the expression concept of the IFLA-FRBR model [107].

**Examples:**

- An example of view that can be envisaged over the same *Information Object* representing a data stream of an environmental sensor consists of its raw form as a series of numerical values or as a graph representing the evolution of the values measured by the sensor along the time.
- Another example might consider an *Information Object* representing the outcomes of a workshop, three different views of this object can be envisaged:
  - the “full view” containing a preface prepared by the conference chair and the whole set of papers accepted and organised thematically,
  - the “handbook view” containing the conference program and the slides of each lecturer accompanied with the abstract of the papers organised per session, and
  - the “informative view” reporting the goal of the workshop and the title list of the accepted papers together with the associated abstract.

## C10 Manifestation

**Definition:** An *Information Object* representing the physical embodiment of another *Information Object*, to which it is related via a *<hasManifestation>* relationship.

**Relationships:**

- *Manifestation <isa> Information Object*
- *Information Object <hasManifestation> Information Object*

**Rationale:** Like *Editions* and *Views*, *Manifestations* are derived from a relation (<hasManifestation>). However, while the *Editions* and *Views* deal with the intellectual and logical organisation of *Information Objects*, *Manifestations* deal with their physical presentation. Another important difference is that *Manifestations* may, transparently to the *Actor*, be dynamically generated through a possibly complex process, taking into account *Actor* preferences, templates, size restrictions, and other factors.

**Examples:** Examples of manifestations are the PDF file or the Microsoft Word file of the same paper, the MPEG file containing the video recording of a lecture, a file containing the raw data observed by a sensor, an XML file reporting the results of a certain elaboration.

## C11 Metadata

**Definition:** Any *Information Object* that is connected to one or more *Resources* through a <hasMetadata> relationship.

### Relationships:

- *Metadata* <isa> *Information Object*
- *Resource* <hasMetadata> *Information Object (Metadata)*
- *Information Object* <hasMetadata> *Information Object (Metadata)*
- *Metadata* <hasFormat> *Resource Format* that is an <expressionOf> *Ontology* (inherited by *Resource*)
- *Actor Profile* <isa> *Metadata*
- *Policy Metadata* <isa> *Metadata*
- *Component Profile* <isa> *Metadata*

**Rationale:** The “classic” definition of metadata is “data about data”. However, it depends from the context whether an object is or is not metadata. This is the main motivation leading to the modeling of them as a derived notion from the instances of the <hasMetadata> relation.

Metadata are used for describing different aspects of data, such as the semantics, provenance, constraints, parameters, content, quality, condition, and other characteristic. These data can be used in different contexts and for a diversity of purposes; usually, they are associated with an *Information Object* (more in general to a *Resource* through the <hasMetadata>) as a means for facilitating the effective discovery, retrieval, use and management of the object.

There are a number of schemes for classifying metadata.

One of them consists in classifying metadata according to the specific role they play:

- Descriptive metadata, i.e. metadata that provide a mechanism for representing attributes describing and identifying the *Resource*. Examples include bibliographical attributes (e.g. creator, title, publisher, date), format, list of keywords characterising the contents. The term “descriptive” is used here in a consistent, but broader sense than in “descriptive cataloguing”.
- Administrative metadata, i.e. metadata for managing a *Resource*. This category of metadata may include metadata detailing: (i) technical characteristics of the *Resource*, (ii) the history of the operations performed on the *Resource* since its creation/ingest, (iii) means of access, (iv) how the authenticity and integrity of the *Resource* can be verified.
- Preservation metadata, i.e. metadata designed to support the long term accessibility of a *Resource* by providing information about its content, technical attributes, dependencies, management, designated community(ies) and change history. Preservation Metadata have been identified as essential for the long-term management of digital objects. The Reference Model for an Open Archival Information System (OAIS) [49] provides an

excellent overview of the role of preservation metadata in the management overtime of digital resources. PREservation Metadata: Implementation Strategies Working group, commonly referred to as PREMIS, defined a core set of preservation metadata elements that would provide support for the management of digital objects across systems, and time. They acknowledged while they had identified the key aspects of the necessary preservation metadata there was room for more work in the area of technical metadata and that this might be necessary at the level of each DL *Resource* or *Collection*. Preservation metadata encompasses technical elements necessary to enable access to, manipulation and/or rendering of a DL *Resource*, data about the structure and syntax of an *Information Object*, information to support semantic understanding of *Resources* and details of the responsibilities and rights governing the application of preservation actions to *Resources*.

Another scheme classifies metadata according to what kind of *Resource* feature they present:

- Syntactic metadata present data about the syntax or structure of the resource. They provide data such as time or space of *Resource* creation or inclusion into the *Digital Library*, size of *Resource*. Inherent metadata can be obtained from the *Resource* itself. They are dependent on the *Manifestation* used.
- Semantic metadata provide data about the *Resource* itself (the semantics of the *Resource*). These metadata could be explicitly or implicitly derived from the *Resource*, or generated by human.
- Contextual metadata provide data related neither to the structure, nor to the semantics of a *Resource*, but to other issues within the context of the DL. They might be needed to understand the *Resource* or the ways of its possible use.

Other examples of classification criteria are: by purpose (for search or wider use); by fluidity (static or dynamic), by mode of generation (human or automatic).

All the above mentioned classifications are orthogonal, i.e. they are not mutually exclusive, in the sense that a metadata may fall into more than one of the identified categories. For instance, the metadata describing the creator of a DL resource can be used for discovering the resource, for managing its digital rights, or for authentication purposes.

#### **Examples:**

- Keywords are Metadata because they represent the content of a *Resource*.

## **C12 Actor Profile**

**Definition:** An *Information Object* that models any external entity (*Actor*) that interacts with the Digital Library. It is identified by a *Resource Identifier*. An *Actor Profile* may belong to a distinct *Actor* or it may model more than one *Actor*, i.e., a *Group* or a *Community*.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Actor Profile* <isa> *Information Object*
- *Actor Profile* is <identifiedBy> *Resource Identifier* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Actor* is <modelledBy> *Actor Profile*
- *Function* is <influencedBy> *Actor Profile*

**Rationale:** An *Actor Profile* is an *Information Object* that models an *Actor* by potentially capturing a great variety of the *Actor*'s characteristics, which may be important for a particular Digital Library for allowing the *Actor* to use the "system" and interact with it as well as with other *Actors*. It does not only serve as a representation of *Actor* in the system but it essentially determines *Policies* and *Roles* that govern which *Functions* an *Actor* is entitled to perform through the *Actor*'s lifetime and how these functions should behave when

exploited by him (<*influencedBy*>). For example, a particular instance of *Actor* may be entitled to *Search* within particular *Collections* and *Collaborate* with particular other *Actors*. The characteristics captured in an *Actor Profile* vary depending on the type of *Actor*, i.e., human or non-human, and may include: identity information (e.g., age, residence or location for humans and operating system, web server edition for software components), educational information (e.g., highest degree achieved, field of study – only for humans), and preferences (e.g., topics of interest, pertinent for both human and software *Actors* that interact with the *Digital Library*).

**Examples:**

- Group Profile, i.e., the *actor profile* capturing the characteristics of a *Group* as a single entity.
- Community Profile, i.e., the *actor profile* capturing the characteristics of a *Community* as a single entity.

### C13 Component Profile

**Definition:** The *Metadata* attached to an *Architectural Component*.

**Relationship**

- *Component Profile* <*isa*> *Metadata*
- *Component Profile* <*isa*> *Information Object* (inherited from *Metadata*)
- *Architectural Component* <*hasProfile*> *Component Profile*
- *Component Profile* <*profile*> *Policy*
- *Component Profile* <*profile*> *Quality Parameter*
- *Component Profile* <*profile*> *Function*
- *Component Profile* <*profile*> *Interface*

**Rationale** The *Component Profile* is a specialization of the *Metadata* objects and plays exactly the same role, i.e. provide additional information for management purposes. Neither statements nor constraints are imposed on the *Component Profile* associated with each *Architectural Component*. However, it is envisaged that this additional information should deal with the *Interfaces* the component has, the *Quality Parameters* it has, the *Policies* regulating it, and the *Functions* it yields.

**Examples:** --

### C14 Annotation

**Definition:** An *Annotation* is any kind of super-structural *Information Object* including notes, structured comments, or links, that an *Actor* may associate with a *Region* of a *Resource* via the <*hasAnnotation*> relation, to add an interpretative value. An annotation must be identified by a *Resource Identifier*, be authored by an *Actor*, and may be shared with *Groups* according to *Policies* regulating it (*Resource* is <*regulatedBy*> *Policy*). An *Annotation* may relate a *Resource* to one or more other *Resources* via the appropriate <*hasAnnotation*> relationship.

**Relationships:**

- *Annotation* <*isa*> *Information Object*
- *Annotation* is <*identifiedBy*> *Resource Identifier*
- *Resource* <*hasAnnotation*> *Information Object* about a *Region*

**Rationale:** *Annotations* can support co-operative work by allowing *Actors* to merge their intellectual work with the DL *Resources* provided by the DL to constitute a single working context. *Annotations* can be used in various contexts, e.g.

- to express a personal opinion about an *Information Object*,
- to enrich an *Information Object* with references to related works or contradictory *Information Object*,
- to add personal notes about a retrieved *Information Object* for future usage.

*Annotations* are not only a way of explaining and enriching a DL *Resource* with personal observations, but also a means of transmitting and sharing ideas in order to improve collaborative work practices. Thus, *annotations* can be geared not only to the way of working of the individual and to a method of study, but also to a way of doing research, as it happens in the Humanities.

As *Annotations* are *Information Objects* they may be in different formats, be expressed in different media, be associated with *metadata*, and can be themselves annotated. Actually, in literature there is an ongoing discussion whether *annotations* have to be considered either *metadata* or *information objects*. For the time being an *Annotation* is modelled as an *Information Object* because (i) it has been considered an additional information that increase the existing content by providing an additional layer of elucidation and explanation of it, and (ii) because of this, the *Annotation* itself takes the shape of an additional *Information Object* which can help people in understanding the annotated *Resource*. Actually, the status of *Annotation* is derived from the *<hasAnnotation>* relation linking *Resources*; this choice settles the long-standing issue whether *Annotations* are to be considered as *Information Objects* or as *Metadata*.

A final observation is about the evolving nature of the *Information Objects* and in general of the *Resources* that may result in invalidating a previously expressed *Annotation*. Usually each update results in having a new *Edition* thus it is sufficient to link the *Annotation* to the appropriate version it refers to.

**Examples: --**

## C15 Collection

**Definition:** A content *Resource Set*. The extension of a collection consists of the *Information Objects* it contains. A *collection* may be defined by a membership criterion, which is the intension of the collection.

**Relationships:**

- *Collection <isa> Resource Set*
- *Collection <isa> Resource*
- *Information Object <belongsTo> Collection*
- *Collection <hasIntension> Query*
- *Collection <hasExtension> Resource Set (set of Information Object)*

**Rationale:** *Collections* represent the “classic” mechanism to organise *Information Objects* and to provide focused views of the *Digital Library Information Object Resource Set*. These focused views enable *Actors* to access to thematic parts of the whole; they can be created by the *Librarians* in order to keep the set of *Information Objects* organised and to improve its access and usage; further, they can be created by authorised *Content Consumers* in order to implement their own personal views of the *Digital Library Information Object Resource Set*.

The definition and identification of the *Information Objects* constituting a *Collection* (the collection extension) is based on a characterisation criterion (the collection intension). These criteria can range from an enumeration of the extension to conditions that specify which are the properties that information objects must satisfy in order to be collection members (truth conditions).

Typically, *Collections* are hierarchically structured in sub-collections, but for generality we do not include this structuring in the present model.

**Examples: --**

## **C16 Query**

**Definition:** A characterisation criterion capturing the common traits of the *Resources* forming a *Resource Set*.

**Relationships:**

- *Query* <isa> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** The notion of query is well known in the DB area where it indicates an expression issues according to a query language, e.g. SQL, to obtain the data stored in the DB. Digital Libraries, as well as other Information Retrieval systems, borrowed this term to represent the information need of their users. In the case of Digital Libraries queries can be expressed according to various query languages ranging from keyword-based to fielded forms.

The notion of *Query* is foundational for the *Search* Function. However, it can be used for other purposes. This reference model uses them to capture the intension (<*hasIntension*>) definition of a *Collection*.

**Examples:**

- “Digital Library” is the representation of a query constituted by two tokens issued by an user interested in retrieving *Resources* dealing with Digital Libraries;
- “subject=H3.7 Digital Library AND author=Arms” is the representation of a complex and fielded query issued by an *Actor* interested in finding the *Resources* having *metadata* that contains the specified values in the identified fields.

## **C17 Ontology**

**Definition:** An *ontology* is a formal conceptualization that defines the terms about a domain. *Ontologies* formalize a shared vocabulary about a domain [93]

**Relationships:**

- *Ontology* <isa> *Information Object*
- *Resource Format* is <*expressionOf*> *Ontology*

**Rationale:** The notion of *ontology* generalizes that of schema or format, as well as related notions, such as that of thesaurus. *Ontologies* may refer to different aspects of *Information Objects*, such as their structure, their content, their preservation and others. Although a Digital Library might define and adopt its own proprietary formats, it is widely acknowledged that standard representation models (e.g. Dublin Core for descriptive metadata, MPEG for the structure of audio-visual objects, OAIS for preservation) enhance the interoperability and reuse of *Resources*. The emergence of rich schemas, such as CIDOC Conceptual Reference Model (CRM) [190], which enable content owners or holders to define articulated descriptions of their digital assets, and to exploit such descriptions in accessing the information or in managing complex applications around them demands greater flexibility at

the level of generalisation. Semantic Web technologies, notably the Web Ontology Language (OWL), which builds upon Description Logics and the associated inferential capabilities is another driver.

The reference model does not make any commitment to a specific Ontology, rather it assumes that the various “systems”, *DL*, *DLS*, and *DLMS*, will be able to offer to its users the ability to handle multiple ontologies either sequentially or independently. A mechanism to support this could offer:

- An ontology language, able to represent any ontology the DL users may want to work with (e.g. OWL);
- An ontology mapping framework, consisting of a language for expressing relations between elements from different ontologies, and an associated engine to exploit such mappings in query evaluation.

**Examples:** --

## C18 User Domain

**Definition:** One of the six main concepts characterising the digital library universe. It represents the various aspects related to the modelling of external entities, either human or machines, interacting with the digital library.

**Relationships:**

- *Digital Library* <definedBy> *Actor Domain*
- *Digital Library System* <definedBy> *Actor Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* <definedBy> *Actor Domain*
- *Actor Domain* <consistOf> *Actor*

**Rationale:** The *User Domain* concept represents the *Actors* (whether human or not) entitled to interact with *Digital Libraries*. The aim of *Digital Libraries* is to connect such *Actors* with information (the *Information Objects*) and to support them in consuming already available information and produce new information (through the *Functions*). *User Domain* is an umbrella concept that covers all notions related to the representation and management of *Actor* entities within a *Digital Library*, e.g., the digital entities representing the *actors*, their rights within the system, their profiles (*Actor Profile*) exploited to personalize the system’s behaviour or to represent these actors in collaborations.

**Examples:** --

## C19 Actor

**Definition:** A *Resource* that represents an external entity that interacts with the Digital Library and it is identified by a *Resource Identifier*. Furthermore, it may have at least one *Actor Profile* and it may belong to at least one *Group* and be regulated by a set of *Policies*. An *Actor* may be characterized by *Quality Parameters* and may be linked to other *Actors*.

**Relationships**

- *Actor* <isa> *Resource*
- *Actor* is <identifiedBy> *Resource Identifier* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Actor* is <regulatedBy> *Policy* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Actor* <belongTo> *Group*
- *Actor* is <modelledBy> *Actor Profile*
- *Actor* is <associatedWith> *Actor*

- *Actor* <hasQuality> *Quality Parameter*
- *Actor* <play> *Role*
- *Actor* <perform> *Function*
- *Group* <isa> *Actor*

**Rationale:** An *Actor* captures any entity external to a Digital Library that interacts with it or with other similar entities through the *Functions* offered by the Digital Library and includes humans, and inanimate entities, such as software programs or physical instruments. The latter may range from subscription services offered by external systems to portals and other Digital Libraries that pull from or push content to the particular Digital Library. Although each distinct entity may be recognized in the system by a single *Resource Identifier*, it may play a different *Role* at different times, belong to more than one *Group* and be associated with more than one *Actor Profile*. For instance, an *Actor* may have a different profile assuming the *Content Creator* role and a different profile under the *Content Consumer* role. *Policies* that are associated with an *Actor*, through an individual or group *Actor Profile*, govern the *Actor*'s interactions with the system and with other *Actors* through their lifetime, e.g., the set of permissible *Functions* for an *Actor*. An *Actor* may be characterised by various *Quality Parameters*. For instance, a human may be distinguished on the basis of *Authoritativeness* and a software agent may be characterized by its *Robustness*. Such quality parameters may be used to guide or value an *Actor*'s interactions. For instance in actor groupings, such as human co-operations or co-authorships or software component integrations, captured by instantiating the <associatedWith> relations, a more authoritative *Actor* can be trusted for sharing content from an *Actor* of disputable quality.

**Examples:**

- A *Group* is an *Actor*.
- A *Community* is an *Actor*.

## C20 Group

**Definition:** A *Resource Set* that models a set of external entities with common characteristics and following specific interaction rules and patterns within the Digital Library. It is identified by a *Resource Identifier*. A *Group* may be modelled by an *Actor Profile* that specifies the characteristics of the members of the group. The membership to the *Group* (<belongTo>), i.e. the set of *Actors* belonging to it, can be determined by enumerated its members or by capturing the similar traits of the *Actors* in a *Query*. In this second case the membership to the *Group* will be dynamically determined by evaluating the *Query*.

**Relationships**

- *Group* <isa> *Resource Set*
- *Group* is <identifiedBy> *Resource Identifier* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Group* <isa> *Actor*
- *Group* is <modelledBy> *Actor Profile* (inherited from *Actor*)
- *Actor* <belongTo> *Group*
- *Community* <isa> *Group*

**Rationale:** A *Group* represents an *Actor* population that exhibits cohesiveness to a large degree and can be considered as an *Actor* with its own profile and identifier. A *Group* is described by a *Actor Profile* that essentially specifies explicitly (through enumeration) or implicitly (through a set of desired characteristics) the members of the group, and specifies the *Roles* an *Actor* of the *Group* can take and the *Policies* that govern the *Actor* interactions in

the system, such as permissible *Functions* and accessible *Resources*. Members of a *Group* inherit (part of) the characteristics from the *Group* but they may have additional characteristics as described in their individual *Actor*'s profile.

**Examples:**

- *Community* is an example of *Group*.

## C21 Community

**Definition:** A social *Group*.

**Relationships**

- *Community* <isa> *Group*

**Rationale:** A *Community* is a particular subclass of *Group*, which refers to a social group of humans with shared interests. In human *Communities*, intent, belief, resources, preferences, needs, risks and a number of other conditions may be present and common, affecting the identity of the participants and their degree of cohesiveness. *Community* is a pre-existing group of people with shared interests, which is online in the Digital Library, or a group that is formed as *Actors* in the Digital Library interact with the Library's contents or with other *Actors*. For instance, in a Digital Library with publications, there may be the *Community* of people interested in Artificial Intelligence and the *Community* of people providing test collections for Information Retrieval algorithms. On the other hand, as *Group* it is a well-defined user community identified by a specific *Actor Profile* and *Resource Identifier*. The *Profile* records permissible *Roles*, *Functions*, and *Resources* according to specific *Policies*.

**Examples:** --

## C22 Role

**Definition:** A set of functions within the context of an organisation with some associated semantics regarding the authority and responsibility conferred on the user assigned role.

**Relationships:**

- *Actor* <play> *Role*
- *End-User* <isa> *Role*
- *DL Designer* <isa> *Role*
- *DL System Administrator* <isa> *Role*
- *DL Application Developer* <isa> *Role*

**Rationale:** The above definition comes from [74] and works in accordance with the policy mechanism pervading the *Policy Domain* (Section II.2.5). A role is a kind of a pre-packaged generic profile and may be viewed as a packet of statements identifying the kind of *Functions* a *Actor* is eligible to perform within the system. Thus, a role may be stored as a profile that represents an individual or (most likely) a population of users. *Roles* are also called stereotypes in user modelling. An *Actor* can be assigned to a *Role*; this means, the *Actor* inherits all the *Role* statements. Clearly an *Actor* can play different *Roles* at different times or more than one *Role* at the same time. Apart from the four main *Actor Roles* defined (*End User*, *DL Designer*, *DL System Administrator*, and *DL Application Developer*), the following generic *Role* are distinguished within a DL context and are subsequently defined: *Content Consumer*, *Content Creator*, and *Librarian*, which are sub-roles of the *End-User* role. Apart from these roles and sub-roles that are prototypically defined in the reference model, any digital library could, and should, define additional roles. A sub-role may be defined providing

it with some of the *Functions* of a generic *Role*. For example, a content annotator *Role* might be a sub-role of information creator that entitles *Actors* to only annotate existing *Information Objects*.

**Examples:** --

### **C23 End-User**

**Definition:** The *Role* of the *Actors* that access the *Digital Library* for exploiting its *Resources* and possibly producing new ones.

#### **Relationships**

- *End-User* <isa> *Role*

**Rationale:** *End-Users* exploit DL facilities for providing, consuming, and managing DL content (usually *Information Objects*, in general *Resources*). It is actually a class of *Actors* further subdivided into the concepts of ***Content Creator***, ***Content Consumer***, and ***Librarian***, each one of which usually has a different perspective on the Digital Library. For instance, a *Content Creator* may be a person that creates and inserts their own objects in the Digital Library or an external program that automatically converts artefacts to digital form and uploads them to the Digital Library.

**Examples:** --

### **C24 Content Consumer**

**Definition:** The *Role* of the *Actors* that access the digital library for consuming its *Resources*, usually *Information Objects*, through the available *Functions*.

#### **Relationships**

- *Content Consumer* <isa> *End-User*

**Rationale:** A *Content Consumer* is any entity that accesses the Digital Library for exploiting (part of) its *Resources*. A person that searches (*Search* function) the contents of a digital collection or an external subscription service are instances of *Content Consumers*.

**Examples:** --

### **C25 Content Creator**

**Definition:** The *Role* of the *Actors* that provide new *Information Objects* to be stored into the digital library or update already existing *Information Objects*.

#### **Relationship**

- *Content Creator* <isa> *End-User*

**Rationale:** A *Content Creator* may be a human or a program or another system. For instance, it may be a person that creates and inserts their own documents in the Digital Library or an external program that automatically converts artefacts to digital form and uploads them to the Digital Library.

**Examples:** --

### **C26 Librarian**

**Definition:** The *Role* of the *Actors* that manage digital library's *Resources*, namely *Information Objects* and *End-Users*.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Librarian* <isa> *End-User*

**Rationale:** See Section II.2.3.

**Examples:** --

## **C27 DL Designer**

**Definition:** The *Role* of the *Actors* that by interacting with the *Digital Library Management System* define the characteristics of the *Digital Library*.

### **Relationships**

- *DL Designer* <isa> *Role*

**Rationale:** See Section II.2.3.

**Examples:** --

## **C28 DL System Administrator**

**Definition:** The *Role* of the *Actors* that by interacting with the *Digital Library Management System* define the characteristics of the *Digital Library System*, put this in action and take care to monitor its status as to guarantee the operation of the *Digital Library*.

### **Relationships**

- *DL System Administrator* <isa> *Role*

**Rationale:** See Section II.2.3.

**Examples:** --

## **C29 DL Application Developer**

**Definition:** The *Role* of the *Actors* that by interacting with the *Digital Library Management System* enrich or customise the set of *Software Components* that will be used by the *DL System Administrator* to implement the *Digital Library System* serving the *Digital Library*.

### **Relationships**

- *DL Designer* <isa> *Role*

**Rationale:** See Section II.2.3.

**Examples:** --

## **C30 Functionality Domain**

**Definition:** One of the six main concepts characterising the digital library universe. It represents the various aspects related to the modelling of facilities/services provided in the digital library universe to serve *Actor* needs.

### **Relationships**

- *Digital Library* <definedBy> *Functionality Domain*
- *Digital Library System* <definedBy> *Functionality Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* <definedBy> *Functionality Domain*
- *Functionality Domain* <consistOf> *Functions*

**Rationale:** The *Functionality Domain* concept represents the services that *Digital Libraries* offer to their *Actors*. The set of facilities expected from a *Digital Libraries* is extremely broad and varies according to the application context. There are a number of *Functions* that *Actors* expect from each *digital library*, e.g., search, browse, information objects visualization. Beyond that, any *Digital Library* offers additional *Functions* to serve the specific needs of its community of users.

**Examples:** --

### C31 Function

**Definition:** A particular operation that can be realized on a *Resource* or *Resource Set* as the result of an activity of a particular *Actor*. It is identified by a *Resource Identifier*. It may be performed by an *Actor* or it may refer to the respective supporting process of the DLS.

**Relationships:**

- *Function* <isa> *Resource*
- *Function* is <identifiedBy> *Resource Identifier* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Function* is <influencedBy> *Actor Profile*
- *Function* is <influencedBy> *Policy*
- *Function* <actOn> *Resource*
- *Function* is <regulatedBy> *Policy* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Function* <hasQuality> *Quality Parameter* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Actor* <perform> *Function*

**Rationale:** A *Function* captures any processing that can occur on *Resources* and is typically perceived as a result of an activity of an *Actor* in a Digital Library. It can possibly involve any type of *Resource* and can be potentially performed by any kind of *Actor*. For instance, not only a user can *Search* the contents in a digital library, i.e., *Information Objects*, but also an *Actor* can search for other *Actors*, a program can *Search* for offered *Functions*, and so forth. Due to its broad scope, *Function* is specialized into a set of specific but still quite generic subclasses, such as *Access Resource*. In practice, a *Digital Library* can use different specializations and combinations of these *Functions* intended to different *Actors* and *Resources*.

**Examples:**

- *Access Resource*
- *Manage Resource*

### C32 Access Resource

**Definition:** The class of *Functions* which provide *Actors* with mechanisms for discovering and accessing *Resources*.

**Relationships:**

- *Access Resource* <isa> *Function*
- *Access Resource* <retrieve> *Resource*
- *Discover* <isa> *Access Resource*
- *Acquire* <isa> *Access Resource*
- *Visualise* <isa> *Access Resource*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *Functions* that do not modify the Digital Library or its *Resources* but help in identifying *Resources* intended to be simply examined and perceived by an *Actor* or possibly further exploited through use of other functions, such as *Manage Resource* functions.

**Examples:** *Discover*, *Acquire* and *Visualise* are three classic *Access Resource* functions.

### C33 Discover

**Definition:** The family of *Functions* to find a *Resource*, which may be an individual one or a *Resource Set* compliant with the specification of the *Actor* request, as expressed by a *Query* or by browsing.

**Relationships:**

- *Discover* <isa> *Access Resource*
- *Discover* <actOn> *Resource Set*
- *Discover* <return> *Result Set*
- *Search* <isa> *Discover*
- *Browse* <isa> *Discover*

**Rationale:** *Discover* is the central *Access Resource* function, which acts on *Resource Sets* and aims at retrieving desired *Resources*.

**Examples:** --

### C34 Browse

**Definition:** It is an *Access Resource* function which lists *Resources* in a *Resource Set* ordered or organised according to a given characteristic or scheme.

**Relationships:**

- *Browse* <isa> *Discover*

**Rationale:** The *Browse* function allows an *Actor* to explore Digital Library's *Resources* and it may be used alternately with *Search* for this purpose. A Digital Library can be equipped with different *Browse* capabilities. For instance, it may provide a different ordering or grouping of *Resources*, such as browse per-author, when a *Collection* of publications is explored for searching the correct form of the name of an author, or through an ontology representing the underlying *Collection* of *Information Objects* or the set of permissible *Functions*. Alternatively, graphical representations of a *Resource Set* may be used for browsing DL *Resources*. For instance, it may be possible to have a digital library *Collection* depicted by using bubbles or areas of different size each representing a certain topic and then navigating among those bubbles in order to investigate on the content of each. Another example is that of a tag cloud<sup>17</sup>, i.e., a visual depiction of descriptors, namely tags, that are used to annotate *Resources*. Tags are typically listed alphabetically, and tag frequency is shown with font size or colour. The tags are usually hyperlinks that lead to a collection of items that are associated with that tag.

**Examples:** --

### C35 Search

**Definition:** It is an *Access Resource* function that allows an *Actor* to discover the *Resources* matching a *Query*, which are returned as a *Result Set*. *Search* must be triggered by a *Query*.

**Relationships:**

- *Search* <isa> *Access Resource*
- *Search* <issue> *Query*
- *Search* <return> *Result Set*

---

<sup>17</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tag\\_cloud](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tag_cloud)

**Rationale:** There are several types of *Search* that can be performed by different types of *Actors* and for accessing different types of *Resources*. For instance, not only a person can *Search* the contents in a digital library, i.e., *Information Objects*, but also an *Actor* can *Search* for other *Actors*, a program can *Search* for offered *Functions*, and so forth. Furthermore, the *Query* describing the desired objects may be based on the content of a *Resource*, its *Actor Profile*, its *metadata*, its *annotations* and so forth, and any combination of them. The form of the *Query* does not constrain the type of *Resource* retrieved, e.g. a textual query can be used to retrieve *Information Objects* whose *manifestations* are videos or audio files. An important characteristic of the *Search* function is the search paradigm adopted. For example, the *Information Objects* desired may be described through a query specification or condition. This may consist of an unstructured query condition, i.e. sequence of search terms, combined with operators, such as “and”, “or”, and “not”, or it can be a structured or fielded search, where query conditions are expressed in terms of the metadata fields, e.g. “all the information objects on a given research topic created by a certain author and published in a specific period of time”. Moreover, an important characteristic of the *search* functionality resides in which model is adopted in identifying the pertinence of the objects with respect to a query, e.g. the Boolean model or the vector-space model.

**Examples:**

- ‘Query-By-Example’, which is based on an example *Resource* provided by the *Actor*. This allows end users for example, to *Search* for *Resources* similar to a provided sample image as well as to *Search* for those deemed similar to an excerpt of an audio.
- ‘Relevance feedback’. This supports the iterative improvement of the search *Result Set* by allowing the *Actor* to express a relevance judgment on the retrieved *Resources* at each iteration step. It improves effectively the discovery mechanism and the user satisfaction because it enhances the expressive power of the query language supported by the digital library.

### C36 Acquire

**Definition:** It is an *Access Resource* function supporting an *Actor* in retaining *Resources* in existence past the lifetime of the *Actor* interaction with the system.

**Relationships**

- *Acquire* <isa> *Access Resource*
- *Acquire* <actOn> *Resource*

**Rationale:** This *Function* provides mechanisms such as locally saving and printing the content or *metadata* related to *Information Objects*.

**Examples:** --

### C37 Visualise

**Definition:** It is an *Access Resource* function enabling an *Actor* to graphically perceive a *Resource*, such as an *Information Object* or an *Actor Profile*.

**Relationships:**

- *Visualise* <isa> *Access Resource*
- *Visualise* <actOn> *Resource*

**Rationale:** *Resources* may be complex and they may be comprised of several parts. For instance, an *Information Object* may combine information manifested in different media. The *Visualise* function must thus be tailored according to the *End-User* characteristics, like the device it uses or its personal setting, as well as to the characteristics of the object to be

rendered. Visualization is any technique for creating images, diagrams, animations, and so forth to communicate a message.

**Examples:** Animation or drawing of diagrams are examples of *Visualise* function.

### C38 Manage Resource

**Definition:** The class of *Functions* which supports the production, withdrawal or update of *Resources*.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Resource* <isa> *Function*
- *Manage Information Object* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Manage Actor* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Manage Function* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Manage Policy* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Manage Quality Parameter* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Create* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Update* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Validate* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Submit* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Withdraw* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Annotate* <isa> *Manage Resource*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *functions*, since the tasks to be performed in order to manage a set of objects are numerous. In specific, *Manage Resource* contains general categories of *functions* applied to each specific domain, as well as general *Functions* the specializations of which may appear in each individual domain.

**Examples:** --

### C39 Create

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* function supporting an *Actor* in creating a new *Resource*.

**Relationships**

- *Create* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Create* <actOn> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** This *function* encapsulates the capabilities to create new *resources*.

**Examples:** --

### C40 Submit

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* function supporting an *Actor* in providing the digital library with a new *Resource*.

**Relationships:**

- *Submit* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Submit* <actOn> *Resource Set*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the *Actor* in submitting a new *Resource* to the DL. According to the policies established by the DL designer, the submit function may add the newly created *Resource* to either an incoming *Resource Set*, i.e. a temporary area that contains

all the objects waiting for being published by the librarians, or directly to the DL *Resource Set*, i.e., the set of *resource* seen by DL *Actors*.

**Examples:** --

### **C41 Withdraw**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* function supporting an *Actor* in withdrawing *Resources* from the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Withdraw* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Withdraw* <actOn> *Resource Set*

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

### **C42 Update**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* function allowing an *Actor* to modify an already existing *Resource*.

**Relationships:**

- *Update* <isa> *Manage Resource*

**Rationale:** This *function* implies capabilities to modify the *Resource*.

**Examples:** In case of *Information Objects*, it may add a new *Edition*, or a new *View* to an already existing *Information Object*.

### **C43 Validate**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* function supporting the *Actor* in validating the quality status of a DL *Resource*.

**Relationships:**

- *Validate* <isa> *Manage Resource*

**Rationale:** This function supports the *Actor* in validating the quality status of a *Resource* of the DL. The *Function* makes use of relevant *quality parameters*.

**Examples:** --

### **C44 Annotate**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* function allowing an *Actor* to create an *Annotation* about a *Resource*.

**Relationships:**

- *Annotate* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Annotate* <createAnnotation> *Annotation*

**Rationale:** This *function* allows an *Actor* to add *Annotations*. *Annotations* are *Information Objects*. Management of existing *Annotations* may be performed using *Manage Resource* and *Manage DL* functions. Moreover, since there are different types of *annotations*, such as notes and bookmarks, the *Annotate* function may allow for the definition of one or more types, which comply with the different meanings of *Annotation* in use.

**Examples:** --

## C45 Manage Information Object

**Definition:** The class of *Functions* that support the production, withdrawal, update, publishing and processing of *Information Objects*.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Information Object* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Manage Information Object* <actOn> *Information Object*
- *Disseminate* <isa> *Manage Information Object*
- *Process* <isa> *Manage Information Object*
- *Author* <isa> *Manage Information Object*

**Rationale:** This category of *Functions* contains a broad set of *Functions* related to all the aspects of the creation, dissemination and processing of *Information Objects*.

**Examples:** --

## C46 Disseminate

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Information Object* function supporting an *Actor* in making *Information Objects* known to the *End Users* according to certain *Policies*.

**Relationships:**

- *Disseminate* <isa> *Manage Information Object*
- *Publish* <isa> *Disseminate*

**Rationale:** This *Function* performs the dissemination of the *Information Object*, actually of their *metadata* or description, to the public through the DL in accordance with the *policies* assigned to them. In particular, the DL system may alert *Groups* or the wider public on the import of new *Information Objects* or *Collections* to the DL. Thanks to this characteristic, digital libraries become proactive systems instead of being just passive systems in charge of replying to user queries.

**Examples:** --

## C47 Publish

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Information Object* supporting an *Actor* in making *Information Objects* available into the DL according to certain *Policies*.

**Relationships:**

- *Publish* <isa> *Disseminate*

**Rationale:** The *information objects* become available within the DL in accordance with the *policies* assigned to them.

**Examples:** --

## C48 Author

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Information Object* function supporting an *Actor* in creating *Information Objects*.

**Relationships**

- *Author* <isa> *Manage Information Object*
- *Author* <creates> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** This function enables the *Actor* to create *information objects* according to one of the DL accepted *information object*' *Resource Format*.

**Examples:** --

### C49 Compose

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Information Object* function supporting the *Actor* in using (parts of) existing *Information Objects* in order to build compound objects.

#### Relationships

- *Compose* <isa> *Author*

**Rationale:** This *function* encapsulates the capabilities to create new *information objects* by re-using existing objects, either in part or as a whole. For example, the user may compose a multimedia album by putting together audio files, song lists, and singer biographies.

**Examples:** --

### C50 Process

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Information Object* function supporting the *Actor* in all activities related with the transformation and analysis of an *information object*.

#### Relationships

- *Process* <isa> *Manage Information Object*
- *Analyze* <isa> *Process*
- *Transform* <isa> *Process*

**Rationale:** This function encapsulates the capabilities to analyze and transform *information objects* in order to view, disseminate or extract information from them. This represents a very important category of *Functions* as it contains fundamental activities for taking advantage of the DL *Content* for scientific, educational and recreational purposes.

**Examples:** --

### C51 Analyze

**Definition:** It is a *Process* function supporting the *Actor* in all activities related with the analysis of an *Information Object*.

#### Relationships

- *Analyze* <isa> *Process*
- *Linguistic Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*
- *Qualitative Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*
- *Statistical Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*
- *Scientific Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*
- *Create Structured Representation* <isa> *Analyze*
- *Compare* <isa> *Analyze*

**Rationale:** This *function* encapsulates the capabilities to analyze information objects in order to extract information from them. It includes *Functions* related to the analysis of the *Information Object* content or *metadata*, for statistical, scientific, linguistic, preservation, etc purposes.

**Examples:** --

## C52 Linguistic Analysis

**Definition:** It is an *Analyze* function supporting the *Actor* in all activities related with the analysis of the textual content of an *Information Object*.

### Relationships

- *Linguistic Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*

**Rationale:** This *function* represents the group of *functions* relevant to the linguistic analysis of the textual parts of an *information object*, related to both its structure (grammar) and meaning (semantics). It is a very crucial one especially in case of textual content of particular importance in that respect, i.e. old manuscripts, literature, etc. A very important specialization of this function could be the detection of named entities in the text or the identification of conceptual relationships in order, for example, to automatically extract concepts and relations for the creation of *ontologies* related to the *content*.

**Examples:** --

## C53 Qualitative Analysis

**Definition:** It is an *Analyze* function supporting the *Actor* in all activities related with the analysis of the quality of an *Information Object* or its *metadata*. It computes an appropriate *Content Quality Parameter*.

### Relationships

- *Qualitative Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*
- *Qualitative Analysis* <measure> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Examine Preservation State* <isa> *Qualitative Analysis*

**Rationale:** This *function* represents the group of *functions* relevant to the qualitative analysis of an *Information Object* or its *metadata*. This may include authenticity, preservation state, integrity, provenance etc. The result of this analysis is the measurement of one or more *Content Quality Parameters*.

**Examples:** --

## C54 Examine Preservation State

**Definition:** It is a *Qualitative Analysis* function supporting the *Actor* to examine the preservation state of an *Information Object* or its *metadata*. It computes an appropriate *Preservation Quality Parameter*.

### Relationships

- *Examine Preservation State* <isa> *Qualitative Analysis*

**Rationale:** This function plays the very important role of examining the preservation state of *Information Objects* in the DL. It is very crucial as it may provide the incentive for restorative or preventive measures for the ensuring high standards of content quality. The result of this analysis is the measurement of one or more *Preservation Quality Parameters*.

**Examples:** --

## C55 Statistical Analysis

**Definition:** It is an *Analyze* function supporting the *Actor* in all activities related with the statistical analysis of an *Information Object*.

### Relationships

- *Statistical Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*

**Rationale:** This *function* represents the group of *functions* relevant to the computation of statistics related to an *information object*.

**Examples:** --

## C56 Scientific Analysis

**Definition:** It is an *Analyze* function supporting the *Actor* in all activities related with the scientific analysis of data represented as an *Information Object*.

### Relationships

- *Scientific Analysis* <isa> *Analyze*

**Rationale:** This *function* represents the group of *functions* relevant to the scientific analysis of an *Information Object*. It includes actions and tools like running a model on a set of data, make scientific computations, offering handbooks with “live” formulas, etc. As DLs with scientific data are of specific importance to the scientific community, their incorporating a wide range of tools for the analysis of this data will be crucial in promoting research and knowledge creation, as well as education, in fields of natural sciences, medicine, etc.

**Examples:** --

## C57 Create Structured Representation

**Definition:** It is an *Analyze* function supporting the *Actor* in all activities related with the analysis of the structure of an *Information Object* and the creation of a representation of this structure.

### Relationships

- *Create Structured Representation* <isa> *Analyze*

**Rationale:** This *function* represents the group of *functions* relevant to the identification of the structure of an *Information Object*, which may refer to an ontology or a table of contents extracted from a text, a grouping of specific scientific data, etc. It is closely related to the *Visualise* function, as the created structure may have different ways of being presented to the *Actor*.

**Examples:** --

## C58 Compare

**Definition:** It is an *Analyze* function supporting the *Actor* in comparing two or more *Information Objects*, either primary ones or their *metadata*.

### Relationships

- *Compare* <isa> *Analyze*

**Rationale:** This *function* represents the group of *functions* relevant to the comparison of *Information Objects*. This may be performed for many reasons, preservation being a very important one among them.

**Examples:** --

## C59 Transform

**Definition:** It is a *Process* function enabling an *Actor* to create different views or manifestations of an *Information Object* (or a set of *Information Objects*).

## Relationships

- *Transform* <isa> *Process*
- *Physically Convert* <isa> *Transform*
- *Extract* <isa> *Transform*
- *Convert to Different Format* <isa> *Transform*

**Rationale:** Different representations of an *Information Object* (or a set of *Information Objects*) enable the *Actor* to perceive information at different levels of abstraction, as desired. Such possible conversions may be achieved with the help of approaches such as format conversions, information extraction, automatic translation and summarization techniques.

**Examples:** --

## C60 Physically Convert

**Definition:** It is a *Transform* function supporting the *Actor* in creating new manifestations of an *information object*.

### Relationships:

- *Physically Convert* <isa> *Transform*
- *Physically Convert* <createManifestation> *Information Object*
- *Translate* <isa> *Physically Convert*

**Rationale:** This *function* represents a wide range of *functions* related to the transformation of the content of the *Information Object*. This transformation may include translation, text to speech and speech to text conversions, tables in texts into spreadsheet or database format, data into graphs, from 3D to 2D, different medium (including from paper to digital form), images into colour histograms etc.

**Examples:** --

## C61 Translate

**Definition:** It is a *Physically Convert* function enabling *Actors* to perceive an *Information Object* in a language different from the object's or the user's native language. In this context languages can range from country languages, e.g. Italian, English, to community and cultural languages, e.g. Muslim culture.

### Relationships:

- *Translate* <isa> *Physically Convert*

**Rationale:** Digital libraries must support the access to the *information objects* in as many different languages as possible to enhance the usage of their Content. This function enables multilingual information access. Multilingual information access approaches include query translation, information object translation and combinations of both.

**Examples:** --

## C62 Convert to a Different Format

**Definition:** It is a *Transform* function enabling an *Actor* to obtain a different *View* of an *Information Object* (or a set of *Information Objects*).

### Relationships

- *Convert to a Different Format* <isa> *Transform*
- *Convert to a Different Format* <createView> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** This *function* enables the user to create a new *version* (e.g. convert the object into another encoding). Depending on the type of the object, different types of conversions may be possible, such as conversion into different encoding (converting a text from pdf to word, an image to a different format or compression scheme, etc). This is a *Function* particularly useful for interoperability purposes.

**Examples:** --

### **C63 Extract**

**Definition:** It is a *Transform* function enabling an *Actor* to obtain a different manifestation of an *Information Object* (or a set of *Information Objects*).

#### **Relationships**

- *Extract* <isa> *Transform*
- *Extract* <createManifestation> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** This *function* enables the user to create a new manifestation of an object which may contain several parts of it. An example of such a function may be the extraction of citations or text summaries.

**Examples:** --

### **C64 Manage Actor**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* function supporting the administration of the set of *Actors* that access the digital library.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Manage Actor* <isa> *Manage Resource*
- *Manage Actor* <actOn> *Actor*
- *Establish Actor* <isa> *Manage Actor*
- *Personalise* <isa> *Manage Actor*

**Rationale:** This is a family of functions supporting the DL administrators in dealing with the DL user management. In particular, they cover the creation of new *Actors*, remove already existing ones, and regulating their rights, i.e. establishing the tasks they are entitled to perform and the *information objects* they are entitled to use as well their profile and associated personalization issues.

**Examples:** --

### **C65 Establish Actor**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Actor* function dealing with the specific issues of the creation of the *Actors* and their recognition by the DL.

#### **Relationships**

- *Establish Actor* <isa> *Manage Actor*
- *Register* <isa> *Establish Actor*
- *Login* <isa> *Establish Actor*

**Rationale:** An important aspect of the management of the DL *Actors* is the user creation, registration, login and application of their profile on their actions.

**Examples:** --

## C66 Register

**Definition:** It is the *Establish Actor* function supporting the adding of a new *Actor* to the set of those managed and recognised by the digital library.

**Relationships:**

- *Register* <isa> *Establish Actor*
- *Sign Up* <isa> *Register*

**Rationale:** This function is responsible for populating the digital library user community. Usually the fewer are the requirements imposed on the registration of novel users, the harder is for the system to ensure the identity of a user. The constraints imposed at registration time are a direct consequence of the audience the digital library is designed for. All these aspects are decided at the DL design time by the *DL Designer* and are related to *policies* and requirements that define the available *Actor Profiles*.

**Examples:** --

## C67 Sign Up

**Definition:** It is a *Register* function supporting *Actors* in actively requesting their registration in the DL and possibly expressing an interest on particular aspects of the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Sign Up* <isa> *Register*

**Rationale:** This function encapsulates actions relevant to the active request of the *Actor* for being registered in the DL and having access to its content. It is closely related to personalization as the *Actor* during this process may fine-tune certain aspects of its *Actor Profile*.

**Examples:** --

## C68 Login

**Definition:** It is an *Establish Actor* function that enables an *Actor* to establish its identity in the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Login* <isa> *Establish Actor*

**Rationale:** *Login* is performed by matching a set of qualities or characteristics that uniquely identifies an *Actor*. Assurance of identification can be increased by a number of practices appropriate to the need. These practices range from passwords to tokens, smart cards, and public keys with Certificates. The system then performs authentication, and it may further perform authorization of the user. The execution of this *function* should be regulated by *policies*.

**Examples:** --

## C69 Personalise

**Definition:** The class of *Manage Actor* that supports *Actors* in having a personalized access to the *Content* and *Functionality* of the DL.

**Relationships**

- *Personalise* <isa> *Manage Actor*
- *Apply Profile* <isa> *Personalize*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *functions* dedicated to adapt aspects of a digital library to the DL users needs. These aspects may range from the DL look and feel to the organisation of the digital library *Content* so that it satisfies the personal interest of its users. A main group of personalization functions contains customization and application of the *Actor Profile* to all DL *Resources*, whereas other *functions* may be related with the user feedback to the DL in order to improve provided *Functionality* and *Content*.

**Examples:** --

### **C70 Apply Profile**

**Definition:** It is a *Personalise* function enabling the applications of the *Actors* to the various types of *Function* offered by a digital library.

**Relationships:**

- *Apply Profile* <isa> *Personalise*

**Rationale:** This function assumes that the system (semi-)automatically constructs a profile per-user. Then, profile information is used to personalize the DL *functions*, e.g. personalized search, recommendations, and so forth.

**Examples:** --

### **C71 Manage Function**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* supporting the administration of the features of the *Functions* provided by the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Function* <isa> *Manage Resource*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *functions* supporting the administration of the DL functionality. In particular, they cover the addition, withdrawal an update of new *Functions*.

**Examples:** --

### **C72 Manage Policy**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* supporting the administration of the set of *Policies* governing the DL and its *Resources*.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Policy* <isa> *Manage Resource*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *functions* supporting the administration of the DL *Policies* which are related with all the DL *Resources*. In particular, they cover the creation of new *Policies* and remove or update already existing ones.

**Examples:** --

### **C73 Manage Quality Parameter**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Resource* supporting the administration of the individual *Quality Parameters*, which refer to all aspects of the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Quality Parameter* <isa> *Manage Resource*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *functions* supporting the administration of *quality parameters*, e.g. their definition.

**Examples:** --

## C74 Collaborate

**Definition:** The class of functions that supports *Actors* in sharing information, working and communicating effectively and efficiently with peers.

### Relationships

- *Collaborate* <isa> *Function*
- *Exchange Information* <isa> *Collaborate*
- *Converse* <isa> *Collaborate*
- *Find Collaborator* <isa> *Collaborate*
- *Author Collaboratively* <isa> *Collaborate*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *functions* that consists of a set of capabilities dedicated to support *Actors* in using the DL as a common workspace. Some of the contained *Functions* may be specializations of other *Functions*, as well, related to information access.

**Examples:** --

## C75 Exchange Information

**Definition:** It is a *Collaborate* function that supports *Actors* in sharing and exchanging information with peers.

### Relationships

- *Exchange Information* <isa> *Collaborate*

**Rationale:** This is a group of *functions* that allows *Actors* to exchange *Information Objects*, which may be *annotations* or *metadata*, or even e-mails and personal messages with attached documents exchanged through the DL system.

**Examples:** --

## C76 Converse

**Definition:** It is a *Collaborate* function that supports an *Actor* in conversing through the DL system.

### Relationships

- *Converse* <isa> *Collaborate*

**Rationale:** This is a group of *functions* that allows *Actors* to talk to peers and exchange views and opinions through DL chat services, on-line forum or list servers.

**Examples:** --

## C77 Find Collaborator

**Definition:** It is a *Collaborate* function that supports an *Actor* in conversing through the DL system.

### Relationships

- *Find Collaborator* <isa> *Collaborate*
- *Find Collaborator* <retrieve> *Actor*

**Rationale:** This function allows an *Actor* to locate other *Actors* of the DL system that will be eligible for collaboration.

**Examples:** --

## C78 Author Collaboratively

**Definition:** It is a *Collaborate* function that supports an *Actor* in authoring collaboratively *Information Objects*.

### Relationships

- *Author Collaboratively* <isa> *Collaborate*
- *Author Collaboratively* <createVersion> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** This *function* allows the *Actors* to collaborate in authoring an *Information Object* in order to create a new version (<hasView> or <hasEdition>) of it.

**Examples:** --

## C79 Manage DL

**Definition:** The class of *functions* managing the *Content*, *Actors* and other Resources of the DL in order to achieve the desired *Quality Parameters* in agreement with the established *Policies*.

### Relationships

- *Manage DL* <isa> *Function*
- *Manage Content* <isa> *Manage DL*
- *Manage User* <isa> *Manage DL*
- *Manage Functionality* <isa> *Manage DL*
- *Manage Quality* <isa> *Manage DL*
- *Manage Policy Domain* <isa> *Manage DL*

**Rationale:** This class involves *functions* dealing with managing issues of the DL domains, involving the import and export of *Collections*, the definition of *Actor Roles*, the management of general *Policy* issues, etc.

**Examples:** --

## C80 Manage Content

**Definition:** The class of *functions* managing the *Content* of the DL in order to achieve the desired *Quality Parameters* in agreement with the established *Policies*.

### Relationships

- *Manage Content* <isa> *Manage DL*
- *Manage Collection* <isa> *Manage Content*
- *Preserve* <isa> *Manage Content*

**Rationale:** This family of *Functions* is related with the management of general *Content* issues like the import and export of *collections* from and to other DLs to support interoperability as well as preservation related functions, such as monitoring the overall preservation state of *collections*.

**Examples:** --

## C81 Manage Collection

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Content* function supporting *Actors* in creating, updating, exporting, importing, and removing *Collections*.

### Relationships:

- *Manage Collection* <isa> *Manage Content*

- *Import Collection* <isa> *Manage Collection*
- *Export Collection* <isa> *Manage Collection*

**Rationale:** The importance of collections as a mechanism for organising the digital library Content has been introduced in Section II.2.2. The *collection management* function models the class of *functions* for dealing with *collections*. For example, by exploiting this class of functions, *librarians* can build new *collections* or modify existing ones, which are accessed by many users. On the other hand, *content consumers* are enabled to construct their personal virtual organisation of the digital library *content*. This organisation might resemble the file system folder paradigm, with the main difference that it is virtual and evolves dynamically following the dynamism of the digital library. For instance, if a new document matching the definition criteria of a *content consumer collection* is added to the digital library, this automatically becomes part of that *collection*.

It should be noted here that the *functions* for collection management may also be grouped under the *Manage Resource* function. However, the management of collections should be differentiated as it contains two very important *functions* that are related to issues of interoperability and preservation, the import and export of collections from and to other DLs.

**Examples:** --

## C82 Import Collection

**Definition:** The *Manage Collection Function* that supports the selection of the third-party information sources whose objects will populate the DL *Content*.

**Relationships:**

- *Import Collection* <isa> *Manage Collection*

**Rationale:** This *function* can be realised in different ways according to which typology of the DLMS ingestion mechanism is supported.

**Examples:** Harvesting of the content of an OAI [134] compliant Repository through OAI-PMH [135] is a kind of *Import Collection*.

## C83 Export Collection

**Definition:** The *Manage Collection Function* that supports the export of the DL *content*.

**Relationships:**

- *Export Collection* <isa> *Manage Collection*

**Rationale:** This functionality can be realised in different ways in order to make its collection content available to other DLs.

**Examples:** Having the DL *Content* compliant with the OAI [134] and thus available through OAI-PMH [135] is a possible implementation of the *Export Collection* function.

## C84 Preserve

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Content function* supporting an *Actor* in all actions that involve the preservation of the DL *Content*.

**Relationships**

- *Preserve* <isa> *Manage Content*

**Rationale:** This group of *functions* supports the definition of general preservation programs for specific *collections*, the monitoring of their preservation state and the organization of

preservation works for the DL *Content*. *Preservation Policies* are very important for the preservation related *functions*.

For a comprehensive description of the Preservation issue please refer to Section II.4.

**Examples:** --

## **C85 Manage User**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage DL function* supporting an *Actor* in defining and managing *Roles*, *Groups* and in general concepts related to the *User Domain*.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage User* <isa> *Manage DL*
- *Manage Membership* <isa> *Manage User*
- *Manage Group* <isa> *Manage User*
- *Manage Profile* <isa> *Manage User*
- *Manage Role* <isa> *Manage User*

**Rationale:** This group of functions supports the definition of *actor groups*, *profiles* and *roles* as well as any *function* that is related to the management of general issues in the *User Domain*, like organizing campaigns for new membership in the DL.

**Examples:** --

## **C86 Manage Membership**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage User function* supporting an *Actor* in organizing campaigns for new DL subscribers or maintaining the current ones.

**Relationships**

- *Manage Membership* <isa> *Manage User*

**Rationale:** The DL as an organization in some cases aims at acquiring new subscribers (*Content Consumers*), either for profit or to become known and support its status, and also at maintaining its current ones. This is a function group containing functions like sending e-mails to the current users or the wider public informing of new content in the DL, making suggestions to users on content that may interest them, informing them on the ending of their subscription and suggesting a renewal, etc.

**Examples:** --

## **C87 Manage Group**

**Definition:** The *Manage User function* that supports the management of *Groups* and the fine-tuning of their characteristics.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Group* <isa> *Manage User*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports an *Actor* in managing the *Groups* that are supported by the DL, in terms of characteristics, rights and permissions, etc.

**Examples:** --

## **C88 Manage Role**

**Definition:** The *Manage User function* that supports the management of *Roles* and the fine-tuning of their characteristics.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Role* <isa> *Manage User*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports an *Actor* in defining the roles supported by the created DL, giving each of them rights and permissions, creating new ones and so forth.

**Examples:** --

### **C89 Manage Actor Profile**

**Definition:** The *Manage User function* that supports the management of the *Actor Profile* characteristics.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Role* <isa> *Manage User*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the *Actors* in updating the structure and the information types that may be stored in the *actor profiles* supported by the created DL.

**Examples:** --

### **C90 Manage Functionality**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage DL function* supporting *Actors* in defining and managing functionality related issues.

**Relationships**

- *Manage Functionality* <isa> *Manage DL*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the *Actors* in handling functionality related issues like defining general issues of how the *functions* will be presented and provided to the *End Users*.

**Examples:** --

### **C91 Monitor Usage**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage Functionality Function* supporting an *Actor* in monitoring the use of the DL *functions*.

**Relationships**

- *Monitor Usage* <isa> *Manage Functionality*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the *Actors* in monitoring the use of the provided functions in order to have an insight on *End User* problems and issues relevant to specific functions.

**Examples:** --

### **C92 Manage Quality**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage DL function* supporting an *Actor* in the management of general *Quality Domain* issues.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Quality* <isa> *Manage DL*

**Rationale:** This function supports the management of quality domain issues.

**Examples:** --

### **C93 Manage Policy Domain**

**Definition:** It is a *Manage DL function* supporting an *Actor* in defining and managing general *Policy Domain* aspects in order to regulate the usage of the digital library.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Policy Domain* <isa> *Manage DL*

**Rationale:** This function supports the management of general policy related issues.

**Examples:** --

## C94 Manage & Configure DLS

**Definition:** The class of *Functions* that supports the management and configuration of the DLS that implements the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage & Configure DLS* <isa> *Function*
- *Manage DLS* <isa> *Manage & Configure DLS*
- *Configure DLS* <isa> *Manage & Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** This class allows the *Actors* to create and manage the *digital library system*. In particular, its functions are related with the “Configure”, “Deploy”, and “Monitor”, corresponding, respectively, to the configuration, deployment, and monitoring phases of a digital library development process.

**Examples:** --

## C95 Manage DLS

**Definition:** The class of *Functions* that supports the management of the DLSs that implements the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage DLS* <isa> *Manage & Configure DLS*
- *Create DLS* <isa> *Manage DLS*
- *Withdraw DLS* <isa> *Manage DLS*
- *Update DLS* <isa> *Manage DLS*
- *Manage Architecture* <isa> *Manage DLS*

**Rationale:** This class allows the *Actors* to create, update and withdraw the DLS as well as manage its Architecture so that they provide the DL required.

**Examples:** --

## C96 Create DLS

**Definition:** It is a *function* that supports the creation of the DLSs that implements the DL.

**Relationships**

- *Create DLS* <isa> *Manage DLS*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the creation of a new DLS through a DLMS.

**Examples:** --

## C97 Withdraw DLS

**Definition:** It is a *function* that supports the withdrawal of the DLS that implements the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Withdraw DLS* <isa> *Manage DLS*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the removal of the DLS (and thus of the DL it is realising).

**Examples:** --

### **C98 Update DLS**

**Definition:** It is a *function* that supports the update of the DLS that implements the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Update DLS* <isa> *Manage DLS*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the update of the DLS (and thus of the DL realised by it).

**Examples:** --

### **C99 Manage Architecture**

**Definition:** This *Function* supports the overall management and configuration of *architectural components*.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Architecture* <isa> *Manage DLS*
- *Manage Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*
- *Configure Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*
- *Deploy Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*
- *Monitor Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*

**Rationale:** This family of *functions* supports the creation, configuration, update, deletion and monitoring of *architectural components*.

**Examples:** --

### **C100 Manage Architectural Component**

**Definition:** It is a *Function* that supports the management of a *DLS Architectural Component*.

**Relationships:**

- *Manage Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the creation, update and deletion of *architectural components* for the DLS.

**Examples:** --

### **C101 Configure Architectural Component**

**Definition:** It is *Function* that supports the configuration of a *DLS Architectural Component*.

**Relationships:**

- *Configure Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*

**Rationale:** The model does not establish the way in which this function is supported. For instance, the configuration of a *architectural component* can be done by manually editing the configuration files as well as through a graphical configuration environment capable of driving the *DL System Administrator* during this complex task and of verifying and maintaining the consistency of the configured aspects.

**Examples:** --

## C102 Deploy Architectural Component

**Definition:** It is a *Function* that supports the deployment of a DLS *Architectural Component* on one or more *Hosting Nodes* and their start up.

**Relationships:**

- *Deploy Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*

**Rationale:** The deployment phase consists of assigning components to hosting nodes in order to ensuring the quality values required by the *DL Designer*. As for the configuration functionality, the model does not constrain how this functionality is provided. Some DLMSs may offer sophisticated mechanisms for supporting a dynamic deployment while others may rely on a manual deployment to be done by the *DL System Administrator*.

**Examples:** --

## C103 Monitor Architectural Component

**Definition:** It is a *Function* that keeps the *DL System Administrator* informed of the current status of a deployed DLS *Architectural Component*.

**Relationships:**

- *Monitor Architectural Component* <isa> *Manage Architecture*

**Rationale:** This function relies on the information about the status of the allocation of DLS *system components*. The behaviour of this function can vary according to the information available and to the level of automatic monitoring supported. For instance, it can provide a mechanism allowing the *DL System Administrator* to manually access component status. Alternatively, it can offer both a user interface graphically reporting the status of certain component characteristics and an automatic advertising mechanism alerting the *DL System Administrator* when a certain characteristic of the deployed components exceed an established threshold.

**Examples:** --

## C104 Configure DLS

**Definition:** The class of *Functions* which enable selecting and configuring the entities constituting a specific digital library, in the respective domain: i.e. *Content*, *User*, *Functionality*, *Quality* and *Policy* aspects.

**Relationships:**

- *Configure DLS* <isa> *Manage & Configure DLS*
- *Configure Resource Format* <isa> *Configure DLS*
- *Configure Content* <isa> *Configure DLS*
- *Configure User* <isa> *Configure DLS*
- *Configure Functionality* <isa> *Configure DLS*
- *Configure Policy* <isa> *Configure DLS*
- *Configure Quality* <isa> *Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** This class of *functions* supports the DLS configuration.

**Examples:** --

## C105 Configure Resource Format

**Definition:** The *Configure DLS* function that supports the definition of *Resource Format* the DL *Resources* must comply with.

**Relationships:**

- *Configure Resource Format* <isa> *Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the DL *Designer* in defining the *resource formats* in terms of the general resource model that is desirable for the DL.

**Examples:** --

## C106 Configure Content

**Definition:** The *Configure DLS function* that supports the configuration of general *Content* issues.

**Relationships:**

- *Configure Content* <isa> *Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

## C107 Configure User

**Definition:** The *Configure DLS function* supporting the DL *designer* in configuring the digital library *Actors* both in quantitative and qualitative terms.

**Relationships**

- *Configure User* <isa> *Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** This *function* supports the personalisation of the user domain related aspects. In particular, by interacting with this *function* an *Actor* may configure the *Actor Profile* formats, initialize the DL with *Actor* specializations, initialize *Groups*, etc.

**Examples:** --

## C108 Configure Functionality

**Definition:** The *Configure DLS function* supporting the DL *designer* in configuring the digital library *Functionality Domain* both in quantitative and qualitative terms.

**Relationships:**

- *Configure Functionality* <isa> *Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** This *function* takes as input a DL customisable functionality and assigns values to its parameters thus selecting a specific configuration for it. It is obvious that the broader the range of customisations supported by a *digital library management system* is, the greater its capability to adapt to different scenarios is.

**Examples:** --

## C109 Configure Policy

**Definition:** The *Configure DLS function* supporting the DL *designer* in setting up the DL *Policy Domain*.

**Relationships:**

- *Configure Policy* <isa> *Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** This *function* is the highest-level *function* with respect to the management of *policies*, i.e. all the other *functions* dealing with *policies* are constrained by its choices and outcome. For instance, the *Manage Policy Domain* is constrained by the values specified when invoking the *establish policies* function at DL design time.

**Examples:** --

### C110 Configure Quality

**Definition:** The *Configure DLS* function supporting the *DL Designer* in describing the expected *Quality Parameters* of the digital library service.

**Relationships:**

- *Configure Quality* <isa> *Configure DLS*

**Rationale:** It is a key *function* enabling the *DL designer* to define the *quality parameters* of the system. In particular, it supports the initializations of *quality parameters* and the selection of measurement units and processes for these parameters.

**Examples:** --

### C111 Policy Domain

**Definition:** One of the six main concepts characterising the digital library universe. It represents a set of guiding principles designed to organise actions in a coherent way and to help in decisions making.

**Relationships:**

- *Digital Library* <definedBy> *Policy Domain*
- *Digital Library System* <definedBy> *Policy Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* <definedBy> *Policy Domain*
- *Policy Domain* <consistOf> *Policy*

**Rationale:** The term *policy* usually describes a set of principles which describe the acceptable processes and/or procedures within an organization. *Policy Domain* impact is on how the complete system is designed and how it functions. This means that *Policies* should be incorporated in the *Architecture Domain*, implemented in *Functionality Domain* and should be clear to *Actors* because it effects their work with the *Content Domain* and influences their perception of *Quality Domain*.

Within the three systems in the digital library universe, *Policy Domain* plays different roles.

From the *Digital Library* perspective, *Policies* mean conditions, rules, terms and regulation governing interaction between *Actors* and the *Digital Library*. They provide mechanisms to constrain operations that *Actors* may/may not perform at *DL* on individual *Resources* or at the level of *Digital Library* at a given time.

*Policies* within this system reflect the management goals of the institution providing the Digital Library and they should influence rather than be influenced by technical architecture, functionality, quality, or information content.

From *Digital Library System* perspective, *Policy* is the provision of the capability to define *policies* and enforce them. The *Digital Library System* provides formal mechanisms for defining policies and ensuring that they are effectively enforced.

From *Digital Library Management System* perspective, the emphasis is on the capabilities to implement the elements of the *Policy Domain* that underpin a digital library model.

Building Digital Library *policies* is a complicated task since they must serve the needs of institutions of various types and sizes which work together in a continuously evolving distributed environment.

*Policies* exist at different levels, some ensure the effective functioning of the organisation that manages the DL and others relate more directly to *Actor* services and how they are provided and accessed. They make manifest operational expectations in such areas as: collection development and management guidelines; human resource policies; space use policies; confidentiality practices; user registration and enrolment, library card and borrowing policies; and service use policies, e.g., acceptable user behaviour.

While *Policy Domain* is a general term, specific aspect within a single area are covered by *Policy* and are manifested through a document which usually consists of policy statement, rationale, enforcement, responsible office (*Policy* <expressedBy> *Information Object*).

**Examples: --**

## **C112 Policy**

**Definition:** A condition, rule, term or regulation governing the operation of a Digital Library.

**Relationships:**

- *Policy* <isa> *Resource*
- *Resource* <regulatedBy> *Policy*
- *Actor* <regulatedBy> *Policy*
- *Function* <regulatedBy> *Policy*
- *Policy* <expressedBy> *Information Object*
- *System Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Content Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *User Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Functionality Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Enforced Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Voluntary Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Explicit Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Implicit Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Extrinsic Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Intrinsic Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Descriptive Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Prescriptive Policy* <isa> *Policy*

**Rationale:** A *Policy* regulates *Actors* consuming *Resources* through *Functions* with respect to a validity interval (Time domain can be used here). *Policy* has a specific area coverage, for example *Registration Policy* or *Preservation Policy*.

*Policy* may be descriptive (e.g., Collection Development Policy which explains what is the content of the collection and how it will be developed in future) or prescriptive (there are strict procedures to follow, e.g. *Registration Policy*).

The currently identifies policy entities should be considered as examples; they are currently the most important in the digital libraries.

**Examples:**

*Privacy and Confidentiality Policy* is a *Policy* which describes what rules are followed to assure privacy and confidentiality of the *Actors*. This is seen as a part of the DL system.

The same *Policy* within the *Digital Library System* is seen as the specification what *Functions* should be present, and on the *Digital Library Management System* refers to the practical implementation of the *Functions*.

### **C113 Extrinsic Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* defined outside of and applied within the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Extrinsic Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Extrinsic Policy* is <antonymOf> *Intrinsic Policy*
- *Extrinsic Policy* <isa> *Policy by context*

**Rationale:** *Extrinsic Policy* is a *Policy* that is imposed from a body outside the Digital Library (e.g. legal and regulatory frame works). According to the type of the DL, the regulatory framework might differ - a DL in the pharmaceutical arena will operate in a very different regulatory framework from one in the area of tourism.

**Examples:**

Legal and regulatory frameworks of a specific country applied to a Digital Library developed by a local body.

### **C114 Intrinsic Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* defined inside of and applied within the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Intrinsic Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Intrinsic Policy* is <antonymOf> *Extrinsic Policy*
- *Intrinsic Policy* <isa> *Policy by context*

**Rationale:** *Intrinsic Policy* manifests the *Policy* principles implemented in the DL.

A *Policy* that is defined by the DL or its organisational context that reflect organisation's mission and objectives, intended expectations as to how *Actors* will interact with the DL, expectations of *content creators* as to how their content will be used.

**Examples:**

A *Policy* within the *Policy* of the respective Digital Library is an *Intrinsic Policy*.

### **C115 Explicit Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* that has been stated and approved.

**Relationships:**

- *Explicit Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Explicit Policy* is <antonymOf> *Implicit Policy*
- *Explicit Policy* <isa> *Policy by expression*

**Rationale:** *Explicit Policy* is a *Policy* defined by the DL managing organisation and reflecting the objectives of the DL and how it wishes its users to interact with the DL. The implementation of *Explicit Policy* on the Digital Library Management System level corresponds to the definition and *Actor* expectations.

**Examples:**

Limitation for upload of files over a specified size, e.g. over 1 MB, which is clearly stated in the user interface in addition to the explanation within the text of the *Submission and Resubmission Policy*.

### **C116 Implicit Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* that is inherent in the DL either through accident of design or undocumented development decisions, but was not explicitly planned or stated.

**Relationships:**

- *Implicit Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Implicit Policy* is <antonymOf> *Explicit Policy*
- *Implicit Policy* <isa> *Policy by expression*

**Rationale:** Implicit policies usually arise as a result of ad-hoc decisions taken at system development level or as a consequence of the inadequate testing of DLS that result in an interaction of *policies* resulting in unintended policy deployment.

This is an illustration how improper actions on *Digital Library System* level or *Digital Library Management System* level can cause consequences for the DL.

*Implicit policies* should be avoided as they tend to be opaque, have unintended and unexpected consequences which impact on the interaction of all *Actor* communities with the DL.

**Examples:**

An implemented but not communicated to the *actors* limitation in the file size while uploading or downloading resources from the *Digital Library* is an example of *Implicit Policy*.

### **C117 Prescriptive Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* that constrains or manages interactions between DL *Actors* (virtual or real) and the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Prescriptive Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Prescriptive Policy* <isa> *Policy by application*

**Rationale:** Prescriptive policies can cover a broad range of *policies* from the kinds of *function* specific types of *Actors* can have access to those that govern collection development.

**Examples:**

Termination of file upload, if the file is of format which is not permitted, is an example of action which is taken as a result of a *Prescriptive Policy*.

### **C118 Descriptive Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* which provides explanation on a certain *Policy*.

**Relationships:**

- *Descriptive Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Descriptive Policy* <isa> *Policy by application*

**Rationale:** *Descriptive Policies* are used to present in the form of explanation the aspects of a particular *Policy*. A *Descriptive Policy* is a *Policy* which describe modes of behaviour, expectations of *Actor* interaction, collecting and use guidelines, but which do not manifest themselves through the automated application of rules, as a *Prescriptive Policy* does.

**Examples:**

The *Collection Development Policy* describes what is the scope and coverage of the DL.

### **C119 Enforced Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* which is deployed and strictly applied within the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Enforced Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Enforced Policy* <isa> *Policy by compliance*

**Rationale:** An *Enforced Policy* is a *Policy* developed, deployed and strictly used in the DL. Monitoring and reporting tools are necessary to follow up how the *policy* is being applied.

**Examples:**

*Charging Policy* which had been introduced into the DL is an *Enforced Policy*.

### **C120 Voluntary Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* which is either not deployed within the DL, or which might be followed by the *Actor* according to his own decision.

**Relationships:**

- *Voluntary Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Voluntary Policy* <isa> *Policy by compliance*

**Rationale:** *Voluntary Policy* basically means a *Policy* which is followed according to the decision of the *Actor*. This is valid for all *Policies* which application is a matter of choice. In some cases users may comply to *policies* which are not officially communicated within the particular digital library – based on their previous experience with other digital libraries.

**Examples:**

The *Collection Development Policy* might be outlined in broad terms, but not enforced into practice.

### **C121 System Policy**

**Definition:** A *Policy* that concerns an aspect of a system as a whole, being it a *Digital Library*, a *Digital Library System*, or a *Digital Library Management System*

**Relationships:**

- *System Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Change Management Policy* <isa> *System Policy*
- *Connectivity Policy* <isa> *System Policy*
- *Support Policy* <isa> *System Policy*
- *Resource Management Policy* <isa> *System Policy*

**Rationale:** This is a class of *Policies* which govern generic processes within the digital library system in its entirety on the three levels (DL, DLS and DLMS).

**Examples:** *System Policies* cover most general processes in the digital library, such as regulation of changes or management of resources.

### **C122 Change Management Policy**

**Definition:** The purpose of the *Change Management Policy* is to regulate how changes are being done on the three levels and within the six domains of a digital library in a rational and consistent manner which would be effectively communicated to the *Actors* and would not harm their routine work.

**Relationships:**

- *Change Management Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Resource* <regulatedBy> *Change Management Policy*
- *Change Management Policy* <govern> *Manage DL Function*
- *Change Management Policy* <govern> *Manage DLS Function*
- *Change Management Policy* <govern> *Manage Resource*

**Rationale:** The aim of *Change Management Policy* in DL is to ensure stability in the process of restructuring and assure coherence of actions on the three levels (DL, DLS and DLMS). The complexity of DL could be approached when in the process of change management the issues relevant to the six basic areas – *information objects, actors, policies, quality parameters, architectural components, functions* – and the three levels (DL, DLS and DLMS) are addressed in a rational and consistent manner.

It is of highest importance to define roles and responsibilities in change management, and to consider in detail the change management process and the support which the DLS and DLMS should provide for its smooth execution.

**Examples:**

*Quality Parameter Measures* which demonstrate the change management progress may be part of the *Change Management Policy*.

### **C123 Resource Management Policy**

**Definition:** *Policies* defining how *resources* in the DL are allocated.

**Relationships:**

- *Resource Management Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Resource Management Policy* <isa> *System Policy*
- *Resource Management Policy* <govern> *Resource*

**Rationale:** Resource management is a key area within the organisation and use of *resources* in the DL. *Resource Management Policy* is the *Policy* which describes the principles and procedures related to this field.

Since *Resources* may be of different nature, this *Policy* would usually be a combination of different actions and procedures.

**Examples:**

Checking the consistency of *Resource Identifiers* may be a task from the *Resource Management Policy*.

### **C124 Support Policy**

**Definition:** *Policies* describing the kinds of support that *Actors* can expect in using the DL system and the *Resources* it contains.

**Relationships:**

- *Support Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Support Policy* <isa> *System Policy*
- *Support Policy* <isa> (should be) *Explicit Policy*
- *Support Policy* <isa> (should be) *Descriptive Policy*
- *Support Policy* <isa> (should be) *Intrinsic Policy*
- *Support Policy* <govern> *Actor*

- *Resource <regulatedBy>Support Policy*

**Rationale:** *Support Policy* refers to the technical and educational support on issues arising from the exploitation of *Digital Library Management System*. In this case the *Support Policy* should clearly describe what services are offered. Sometimes it is also helpful to include a list of excluded services.

*Support Policy* should be explicit (*Explicit Policy*), descriptive (*Descriptive Policy*), and intrinsic (*Intrinsic Policy*).

Under some circumstances policies related to support might be prescriptively enforced (*Prescriptive Policy* and *Enforced Policy*).

The procedure to be followed in order to request a service, and the conditions to provide it (charges, prioritizing in the case of several simultaneous requests, and timing) should be clearly expressed in the *Support Policy*.

### Examples

Priorities (critical requests receive higher priority compared to standard ones) may be a component of *Support Policy*.

## C125 Connectivity Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* taking care for maximum access to resources of the DL.

### Relationships:

- *Connectivity Policy <isa> Policy*
- *Connectivity Policy <isa> System Policy*
- *Connectivity Policy <govern> Actor*

**Rationale:** Connectivity can be defined as the society's capacity for communication with itself and with its global environment through the use of ICT.

*Connectivity Policy* should promote all ways which enable *Actors* from various environments to access resources. The DL should be accessible through various communication channels, incl. mobile devices.

### Examples:

Digital divide is one of the threats which may be addressed within the *Connectivity Policy*.

## C126 Content Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* regulating the Content domain.

### Relationships:

- *Content Policy <isa> Policy*
- *Disposal Policy <isa> Content Policy*
- *Collection Delivery Policy <isa> Content Policy*
- *Collection Development Policy <isa> Content Policy*
- *Digital Rights Management Policy <isa> Content Policy*
- *Preservation Policy <isa> Content Policy*
- *Submission and Resubmission Policy <isa> Content Policy*

**Rationale:** This is a class of *Policies* which govern processes related to Content domain within the digital library system in its entirety on the three levels (DL, DLS and DLMS).

**Examples:** --

## C127 Disposal Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* concerning de-accession of DL material.

**Relationships:**

- *Disposal Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Disposal Policy* <isa> *Content Policy*
- *Disposal Policy* <isa> (may be a) *Prescriptive Policy*
- *Disposal Policy* <isa> (may be a) *Descriptive Policy*
- *Disposal Policy* <govern> *Actor*

**Rationale:** *Policies* defining de-accession to DL material from their collections. They are both prescriptive (*Prescriptive Policy*) and descriptive (*Descriptive Policy*).

**Examples:**

De-accession of a *Resource* which has not been requested for a certain time is part of a *Disposal Policy*.

## C128 Collection Development Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* presenting the current Content and the intentions for further development of the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Collection Development Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Collection Development Policy* <isa> *Content Policy*
- *Resource* <regulatedBy> *Collection Development Policy*
- *Information Object* <regulatedBy> *Collection Development Policy*
- *Collection* <regulatedBy> *Collection Development Policy*

**Rationale:** The institution(s) which take care of the DL development make publicly available their vision on the further development of DL through *Collection Development Policy*.

These intentions may reflect different scales – for example number of *Resources*, *Resource sets*, *Collections*. *Collection Development Policy* also can touch issues of subject areas, genres, data formats, or services related to better use of the *collection* and adding value to its content.

Basically, they should describe:

- access to what *Resources* is provided and how resources will be enriched through time - in the short-, mid- and long-term future.
- information on formats, encodings, and recommendations for use of software tools for consulting *resources* (*Resource Formats*).
- guidance on handling or tracking new *Editions*.

*Collection Development Policies* are of help to *Actors* in comparing different DLs in terms of what they offer and how relevant are they to their purposes.

*Collection Development Policies* are of help to the institutions which develop DLs because they help to find and demonstrate the unique standing of a particular DLs.

The *Collection Development Policy* text (*Policy* <expressedBy> *Information Object*) usually describes categories of *Resources*, selection criteria, goals, priorities, services, accessibility.

**Examples:**

Estimation of current coverage of a DL is part of the *Collection Development Policy*.

## C129 Collection Delivery Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* encompassing the constraints effecting how will *Collections* be delivered under what conditions and for what purposes.

**Relationships:**

- *Collection Delivery Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Collection Delivery Policy* <isa> *Content Policy*
- *Collection Delivery Policy* <govern> *Actor*
- *Resource* <regulatedBy> *Collection Delivery Policy*
- *Collection Delivery Policy* <govern> *Browse Function*
- *Collection Delivery Policy* <govern> *Visualise Function*

**Rationale:** *Collection Delivery Policy* covers methods of providing access to the DL - through Internet services, removable memory, stand alone computers, mobile devices, print on demand services.

The *Collection Delivery Policy* should also specify what are the conditions for the delivery (free of charge, or paid; conditions for purchase of single items, or through use licenses).

The *Collection Delivery Policy* may also specify the acceptable uses of *Resources*.

**Examples:**

- Purchasing a DVD with selected.
- Offering Print-on-demand service for selected resources.
- Defining the conditions for commercial use of images from illuminated manuscripts.
- Announcing free use of material for education and research purposes.

## C130 Submission and Resubmission Policy

**Definition:** *Policies* regulating editing submission and resubmission of *Resources* to the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Submission and Resubmission Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Submission and Resubmission Policy* <isa> *Content Policy*
- *Submission and Resubmission Policy* <isa> *Explicit Policy*
- *Submission and Resubmission Policy* <isa> *Prescriptive Policy*
- *Submission and Resubmission Policy* <isa> *Intrinsic Policy*

**Rationale:** *Submission and Resubmission Policies* are governing which *Actors* can submit and resubmit *Information Objects* to the DL.

They should be explicit (*Explicit Policy*), prescriptive (*Prescriptive Policy*), and intrinsic (*Intrinsic Policy*).

Time constraint may be part of a *Submission and Resubmission Policy*.

**Examples:**

*Actors* may have the right to submit, but not to edit *Resources*.

## C131 Digital Rights Management Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* which explains what technologies control how content is used within the DL.

**Relationships**

- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <isa> *Policy*

- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <isa> *Content Policy*
- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <isa> *Functionality Policy*
- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <govern> *Function*
- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <govern> *Configure User Function*
- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <govern> *Digital Rights*

**Rationale:** Digital rights management (DRM) is the technological framework which should guarantee persistent access and use restrictions to *Resources*. *Digital Rights Management Policy* is the *Policy* which explains how the DL manages digital rights both from the perspective of the content creator/originator/owner and that of the *Actor*, and what technologies control the use of content within the DL. While DRM regulates the types of actions that can be done with information (for example, view, save, print, modify certain *Manifestation*), *Digital Rights Management Policy* explains DRM.

Digital rights management is developed as the copyright holders on digital content have exclusive rights of copyright (e.g., the right to make a copy or the right to distribute a work to the public). Copyright holders, however, can not control how digital content is used (e.g. the right to view, save, print, read, or modify a work). Traditional library materials are more protected from unauthorised use because of their ‘physical’ nature. The development of digital content along with the electronic publishing and Internet which places in the digital environment the access to *Manifestation* of the *resources* imposes new issues within the field of copyright regulations.

Restrictions within *Digital Rights Management Policy* may depend on the *Actor*. Some restrictions may be time-dependant.

From Digital Library perspective, *Digital Rights Management Policy* means conditions, rules, terms and regulations governing interaction between *Actors* (virtual or real) and the DL in all cases where copyright or other rights on *resources* apply.

From Digital Library System perspective, *Digital Rights Management Policy* is the provision of the capability to define copyright-related policies.

From *Digital Library Management System* perspective, the emphasis is on the capabilities to implement the elements of the *Digital Rights Management Policy*. This means that the system should be capable to trace certain actions undertaken by the user and react properly.

#### **Examples:**

The *actors* belonging to a specific *group* can view *resources*, but not save local copies.

Viewing *resources* expires within a particular time.

## **C132 Digital Rights**

**Definition:** Policy defining the rights of use of *Information Objects*.

#### **Relationships**

- *Digital Rights* <isa> *Policy*
- *Digital Rights* <isa> *Content Policy*
- *Digital Rights* <isa> *Descriptive Policy*
- *Digital Rights* <govern> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** *Digital Rights* define the particular rights of use of digital objects. In this sense they are a *Descriptive Policy* which regulates the possible uses of *Information Object*. The practical implementation of the *Digital Rights* is within *Digital Rights Management Policy*.

A broader understanding of digital rights defines them as all human rights which are affected by technology, including the rights to use computers, communication networks and resources.

**Examples:**

The right to access knowledge is affected by digital technology and not all people have equal opportunities in this respect. The right to use without any license is another example.

### **C133 License**

**Definition:** A *Policy* regulating the exploitation of a *Resource*.

**Relationship:**

- *License* <isa> *Policy*
- *License* <isa> *Digital Rights Management Policy*
- *Resource* <regulatedBy> *License*
- *License* <grantedTo> *Actor*

**Rationale:** License is the agreement by which the owner of intellectual property permits its use. In digital libraries license may be issued for specific uses of *resources*, or for designated functionality features which should be downloaded and installed by the users.

**Examples:**

GPL (GNU General Public License), a popular license for free software, GNU LGPL (Lesser General Public License), BSD (Berkeley Software Distribution or Berkeley System Distribution) are examples of software licenses.

### **C134 Preservation Policy**

**Definition:** *Policy* defining the approach to preservation taken by the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Preservation Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Preservation Policy* <isa> *Content Policy*
- *Resource* <regulatedBy> *Preservation Policy*

**Rationale:** *Preservation Policy* prescribes how to implement actions assuring long-term preservation of *Resources* - decision making on archival needs, archiving practices, timing issues, access to archived materials, subsequent preservation measures for already archived materials, subsequent preservation measures for already archived material, maintaining preservation metadata, issues of interoperability of preserved materials.

**Examples:**

Reuse of preserved materials is part of the *Preservation Policy*.

### **C135 User Policy**

**Definition:** *Policy* regulating the *User domain*.

**Relationships:**

- *User Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Digital Rights Management Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *User Management Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *Acceptable User Behaviour Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *Personalisation Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *Privacy and Confidentiality Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *Access Policy* <isa> *User Policy*

**Rationale:** This is a class of *Policies* which govern processes related to User domain within the digital library system in its entirety on the three levels (DL, DLS and DLMS).

**Examples:**

All *policies* which regulate issues regarding digital rights and user behaviour.

### **C136 User Management Policy**

**Definition:** *Policy* defining how user management is handled.

**Relationships:**

- *User Management Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *User Management Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *User Management Policy* <govern> *Actor*

**Rationale:** The *User Management Policy* enables to execute *functions* like issuing, managing, changing, sharing accounts; administration rights; sharing resources between multiple users.

**Examples:**

Account management is part of the *User Management Policy*.

### **C137 Registration Policy**

**Definition:** *Policy* describing the information that is required for *Actors*, human and machine, to register with the DL and how this information is validated, managed, and maintained.

**Relationships:**

- *Registration Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Registration Policy* <isa> *User Management Policy*
- *Registration Policy* <govern> *Actor*
- *Registration Policy* <govern> *Login Function*
- *Registration Policy* <govern> *Subscribe Function*

**Rationale:** This *policy* explains how virtual and human users should register in order to use the DL.

The *DLMS* should perform functions on user log-in, validation, management and maintenance.

**Examples:**

Storage of sessions and IP addresses is an element from the *Registration Policy*.

### **C138 Personalization Policy**

**Definition:** *Policy* enabling the DL to define what kinds of personalisation will be allowable and under what circumstances.

**Relationships:**

- *Personalization Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Personalization Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *Personalization Policy* <govern> *Actor*
- *Personalization Policy* <govern> *Personalize Function*

**Rationale:** The *Personalization Policy* has two roles, on the one hand it enables to recognise the user and his/her access rights, and on the other hand it enables DL to serve its *Actors* guaranteeing better *Quality Parameters* by offering *Information Objects* (in general *Resources*) which agree with user preferences. In the DLS the *Functions* which are used to assure personalization are *Apply Profile*, *Customize*, *Login* and *Subscribe*.

## Examples

The choice of representation layout on the basis of statistics of user behaviour is an example of *Personalization Policy*.

## C139 Privacy and Confidentiality Policy

**Definition:** A *policy* which outlines the terms by which the organisation that manages the DL will handle personal information on its *Actors*.

### Relationships

- *Privacy and Confidentiality Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Privacy and Confidentiality Policy* <isa> *User Policy*

### Rationale:

*Policies* prescribing actor details from application and enrolment information through to actor interaction data will be handled by the DL and the organisation that manages the DL.

Typically, the DL should only maintain personal information on *Actors* that is relevant to its better functioning and services.

Data about the *Actors* could be entered directly by them (e.g. user names, passwords), or obtained automatically (e.g., IP address).

The personal data collected should be protected against unauthorized access, destruction, misuse, modification, improper disclosure and loss.

Different rules may be applied to the use of various types of personal information - e.g., email addresses, postal address, log in names and passwords, users' opinions entered through webpages.

*Privacy and Confidentiality Policy* principles should be embedded in the DL *Functions* which requires collection of data about the *Actors* (supplied or automatically collected).

### Examples:

The use of e-mail addresses of the *Actors* for announcing new DL collection may be justified as a part of the *Privacy and Confidentiality Policy*.

Selling or sharing with other organisations lists of e-mail addresses of the *Actors* is typically not in line with the *Privacy and Confidentiality Policy*, unless the users agreed to this.

## C140 Acceptable User Behaviour Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* covering how the *Actors* may or may not interact with the DL.

### Relationships:

- *Acceptable User Behaviour Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Acceptable User Behaviour Policy* <isa> *User Policy*

**Rationale:** *Acceptable User Behaviour Policy* presents rules and regulations for appropriate use of the DL content and services, prescribing what a user can do and what he/she should refrain.

### Examples:

Regulations on copying material from a DL are part of the *Acceptable User Behaviour Policy*.

Rules for citation of the source of material from a DL are part of the *Acceptable User Behaviour Policy*.

Rules on downloading images of workstations for within-institutional use of DL are part of the *Acceptable User Behaviour Policy*.

## C141 Functionality Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* regulating the Functionality domain.

**Relationships:**

- *Functionality Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Access Policy* <isa> *Functionality Policy*
- *Security Policy* <isa> *Functionality Policy*

**Rationale:** This is a class of *Policies* which govern processes related to Functionality domain within the digital library system in its entirety on the three levels (DL, DLS and DLMS).

**Examples:**

Taking care of the security of the digital library is one serious concern which practical implementation would be a *security policy*.

## C142 Access Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* regulating permission or deny of use of *Resources* by *Actors* in the digital library system.

**Relationships:**

- *Access Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Access Policy* <isa> *User Policy*
- *Access Policy* <isa> *Functionality Policy*
- *Charging Policy* <isa> *Access Policy*

**Rationale:** *Access Policy* regulates use of digital library *resources* (permission or denial of use) by *Actors*. It should guarantee that *resources* are accessed by their intended *Actors*, and not by others who might harm them intentionally or deliberately. *Access Policy* belongs to functionality and user domains, because on the one hand it prescribes what *Functions* are possible, and on the other hand regulate the work of the *Actors*.

**Examples:**

Use to *Resources* provided on the basis of IP address identification is an example of *Access Policy*.

## C143 Charging Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* defining how charging schemes will be implemented and handled by the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Charging Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Charging Policy* <isa> *Access Policy*
- *Charging Policy* <govern> *Actor*

**Rationale:** The *Charging Policy* explains what mechanisms are applied for collecting payments.

There are various models which could be applied: services provided on a longer period basis; micro-payments; exchange of use of content for uploading user's own content into the DL.

**Examples:**

Institution has unlimited access to all high quality images stored in a DL on an annual fee basis. The users which do not come from such an institution have only access to low quality images.

## C144 Security Policy

**Definition:** *Policy* regulating how a system provides security and protects *resources* within the DL.

**Relationships:**

- *Security Policy* <isa> *Policy*
- *Security Policy* <isa> *Functionality Policy*
- *Resource* <regulatedBy> *Security Policy*

**Rationale:** *Security policies* are targeted to the protection of the digital library. They implement the rules and tools which assure security of services and integrity of the digital library.

**Examples:**

Ingest of *resources* into the library bound by a virus checking is an example of *security policy*.

## C145 Quality Domain

**Definition:** One of the six main concepts characterising the digital library universe. It represents the various aspects related to features and attributes of *Resources* with respect to their degree of excellence.

**Relationships:**

- *Digital Library* <definedBy> *Quality Domain*
- *Digital Library System* <definedBy> *Quality Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* <definedBy> *Quality Domain*
- *Quality Domain* <consistOf> *Quality Parameters*

**Rationale:** The *Quality Domain* concept represents the various facets used to characterize, evaluate and measure *Digital Libraries*, *Digital Library Systems*, *Digital Library Management Systems* and their *Resources*. *Digital Library*, *Digital Library System*, and *Digital Library Management System* <tenders> a certain level of *Quality Parameters* to its *Actors*, which can be either implicitly agreed or explicitly formulated by means of Quality of Service (QoS) agreement.

**Examples:** --

## C146 Measure

**Definition:** A process for computing and assigning a value to a *Quality Parameter* according to a unit of measurement.

**Relationships:**

- *Quality Parameter* <evaluatedBy> *Measure*
- *Subjective Measure* <isa> *Measure*
- *Objective Measure* <isa> *Measure*
- *Qualitative Measure* <isa> *Measure*
- *Quantitative Measure* <isa> *Measure*

**Rationale:** See *Quality Parameter*.

**Examples:** See *Quality Parameter*.

### C147 Objective Measure

**Definition:** A *Measure* obtained via a well defined process that does not depend on individual perception.

**Relationships:**

- *Objective Measure* <isa> *Measure*

**Rationale:** *Objective Measures* could be obtained by taking measurements and utilizing an analytical way to estimate the achieved quality. They also could be based on processing and comparing measurements between a reference sample and the actual sample as obtained by the system.

The distinction between *Objective Measure* and *Subjective Measure* is due to the fact that *Quality Parameters* can involve measurement methods which can either be independent from the subject who is conducting them or, on the contrary, express the viewpoint and the perception of the subject.

**Examples:** Examples of objective factors related to the perception of audio recordings in a *Digital Library* are: noise, delay, and jitter.

### C148 Subjective Measure

**Definition:** A *Measure* based on, or influenced by, personal feelings, tastes, or opinions.

**Relationships:**

- *Subjective Measurement* <isa> *Measure*

**Rationale:** *Subjective Measures* involve performing opinion tests, user surveys, and user interviews which take into account the inherent subjectivity of the perceived quality and the variations between individuals. The perceived quality is usually rated by means of appropriate scales, where the assessment is often expressed in a qualitative way using terms such as bad, poor, fair, good, excellent to which numerical values can be associated to facilitate further analyses.

The distinction between *Objective Measure* and *Subjective Measure* is due to the fact that *Quality Parameters* can involve measurement methods which can either be independent from the subject who is conducting them or, on the contrary, express the viewpoint and the perception of the subject.

**Examples:** Examples of factors related to the subjective perception of audio recordings in a *Digital Library* are: listening quality, loudness, listening effort.

### C149 Qualitative Measure

**Definition:** A *Measure* based on unit of measurement which is not expressed via numerical values.

**Relationships:**

- *Qualitative Measure* <isa> *Measure*

**Rationale:** *Qualitative measures* are applied when the collected data are not numerical in nature. Although qualitative data can be encoded numerically and then studied by quantitative analysis methods, qualitative measures are exploratory while quantitative measures usually play a confirmatory role. Methods of qualitative measure which could be applied to DL are direct observation; participant observation; interviews; auditing; case study; collecting written feedback.

**Examples:** The opinions of the users expressed in a DL forum or blog can be used as a source for qualitative measure of important issues for the users (content analysis is one of the popular techniques to analyse texts).

### C150 Quantitative Measure

**Definition:** A *Measure* based on unit of measurement which is expressed via numerical values.

**Relationships:**

- *Quantitative Measure* <isa> *Measure*

**Rationale:** *Quantitative measures* are based on collecting and interpreting numerical data. There is a wide range of statistical methods for their analysis.

**Examples:** *Quantitative measure* is applied when collecting data and calculating the mean time spent by the users in locating content.

### C151 Measurement

**Definition:** The action of, and the value obtained by, measuring a *Quality Parameter* in accordance with a selected *Measure*.

**Relationships:**

- *Quality Parameter* <measuredBy> *Measurement*
- *Measurement* is assigned according to (<accordTo>) a *Measure*

**Rationale:** See *Quality Parameter*.

**Examples:** See *Quality Parameter*.

### C152 Quality Parameter

**Definition:** A *Resource* that indicates or is linked to performance or fulfilment of requirements by another *Resource*. A *Quality Parameter* is evaluated by (<evaluatedBy>) a *Measure*, is <measuredBy> a *Measurement*, and expresses the assessment (<expressAssessment>) of an *Actor*.

**Relationships**

- *Quality Parameter* <isa> *Resource*
- *Quality* <expressedBy> *Quality Parameters*
- *Resource* <hasQuality> with respect to *Quality Parameter*
- *Actor* <expressAssessment> about *Resources* according to *Quality Parameters*
- *Quality Parameter* <evaluatedBy> *Measure*
- *Quality Parameter* <measuredBy> *Measurement*
- *Quality Parameter* <affectedBy> *Resource*
- *Generic Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Content Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Functionality Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *User Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Policy Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Architecture Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** *Quality parameters* serve the purpose of expressing the different facets of the *Quality* and provide information about how and how well a *Resource* performs with respect to some viewpoint. They express the assessment of an *Actor*, being it human or not, about the

*Resource* under examination. They can be evaluated according to different *Measures*, which provides alternative procedures for assessing different aspects of a *Quality Parameter* and assigning it a value. *Quality Parameters* are actually measured by a *Measurement*, which represents the value assigned to a *Quality Parameter* with respect to a selected *Measure*.

Note that the *Resource* under examination in a *Quality Parameter* can be either a singleton *Resource*, as for example in the case of the *Integrity* of an *Information Object*, or a *Resource Set*, as for example in the case of the *Orthogonality* of a set of *Functions*.

Finally, a *Quality Parameter* may be affected by other *Resources*, such as other *Quality Parameters*, *Policies*, or *Functions*; this allows us to create a “chain” of *Resources* which leads to the determination of the *Quality Parameter* at hand. For example, the *Availability* is affected by *Robustness* and *Fault Management*: indeed, when *Function* is both robust and able to recover from error conditions, it is probable that also its *Availability* is increased. As a further example, *Economic Convenience* may be affected by *Charging Policy*, since the latter is responsible for the definition of the charging strategies.

Note that, being a *Resource*, a *Quality Parameter* may have *Metadata* and *Annotations* linked to it; the former can provide useful information about the provenance of a *Quality Parameter*, while the latter can offer the possibility for adding comments about a *Quality Parameter*, interpreting the obtained values, and proposing actions to improve it.

Please note that the groupings of *Quality Parameters* in broad categories, such as *Content Quality Parameter*, are made from the perspective of the *Resources* under assessment, in the case of the example mainly *Information Objects*. This means that *User Content Parameter* does not concern issues such as *User Satisfaction* or *Usability*, where the *Actor* is the subject who makes the assessment, but in this group the *Actor* is the object of the assessment from different points of view, such as the *User Behaviour*. Nevertheless, the active role of an *Actor* in expressing an assessment is always preserved in the *Quality Parameter* by the fact the *Actor* <expressAssessment> about a *Resource* in each *Quality Parameter*.

The definition of *Quality Parameter* complies with the notion of quality dimension used in [17].

**Examples:** In order to make clear the relationship between *Quality Parameter*, *Measure*, and *Measurement*, we can take an example from the information retrieval field. One of the main *Quality Parameters* about an information retrieval system is the effectiveness, meant as its capability of answering to the user information needs with relevant items. This quality parameter can be evaluated according to many different *Measures*, such as precision and recall [171]; precision evaluates effectiveness meant as the ability of the system to reject useless items, while recall evaluates effectiveness meant as the ability of the system to retrieve useful items. The actual values for the precision and recall are *Measurements* and are usually computed by using standard tools, such as trec\_eval<sup>18</sup>, which are *Actors*, in this case not human.

### C153 Generic Quality Parameter

**Definition:** A *Quality Parameter* that concerns an aspect of a “system” as a whole, being it a *Digital Library*, a *Digital Library System*, or a *Digital Library Management System*.

#### Relationships:

- *Generic Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Reputation* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*

---

<sup>18</sup> [http://trec.nist.gov/trec\\_eval/](http://trec.nist.gov/trec_eval/)

- *Economic Convenience* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Sustainability* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Security Enforcement* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Interoperability Support* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Documentation Coverage* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Performance* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Scalability* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *Quality Parameters*, reflecting the variety of facets that characterize the quality of the a “system” in its entirety, in particular the *Digital Library*, the *Digital Library System*, and the *Digital Library Management System*.

**Examples:** --

### C154 Economic Convenience

**Definition:** The *General Quality Parameter* which reflects how much favourable is the economic efficiency when using of a *Digital Library*.

**Relationships:**

- *Economic Convenience* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Economic Convenience* <affectedBy> *Charging Policy*

**Rationale:** This parameter evaluates the economic conditions for using the *Digital Library* in order to determine if they are advantageous enough.

There are various appraisal methods that can be applied: for example, comparing the offered economic conditions with market rates for similar services, evaluating the possibility of obtaining value-added services in case of longer subscriptions, or assessing the flexibility of the offering with respect to their own usage needs.

Note that the implemented *Charging Policy* may influence the judgement about the *Economic Convenience* parameter.

**Examples:** An institution may find advantageous to pay a moderate subscription for offering access to standard functionalities to all of its users and pay an extra amount of money for having access to more advanced functionalities for a restricted set of users who actually need them.

As another example, consider the possibility of paying a basic fee for the subscription to a set of standard *Collections* of a *Digital Library* and pay on a per-*Information Object* basis when you access *Information Objects* which belong to a *Collection* you are not subscribed to.

### C155 Interoperability Support

**Definition:** The *Generic Quality Parameter* reflecting the capability of a *Digital Library* to inter-operate with other *Digital Libraries*.

**Relationships**

- *Interoperability Support* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Interoperability Support* <affectedBy> *Connectivity Policy*
- *Interoperability Support* <affectedBy> *Compliance to Standards*

**Rationale:** This parameter concerns the capability of interoperation with other *Digital Libraries* as well as the ability of integrating with legacy systems and solutions.

*Connectivity Policy* may affect *Interoperability Support* since it defines and controls how and how much a *Digital Library* should be accessible.

*Compliance To Standards* may affect *Interoperability Support* since their use makes easier to interact with other systems.

The cost estimation of interoperability may be a component of the *Economic Convenience* measure.

**Examples:** *Interoperability Support* problems can cause delays or impossibility to fulfil user requests; thus they are also related to user satisfaction.

## **C156 Reputation**

**Definition:** The *Generic Quality Parameter* which reflects the trustworthiness of a *Digital Library*.

### **Relationships:**

- *Reputation* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The *Reputation* concerns the “good name” of a *Digital Library*, the credit it owns by the user community, and its ability of being a point of reference.

Other *Quality Parameters* may greatly affect the *Reputation* and we may consider it as a sort of overall indicator of the appreciation of a *Digital Library*.

**Examples:** Examples of aspects which influence the *Reputation* of a *Digital Library* are whether a *Digital Library* provides *Resources* that can be regarded as true, real, impartial, credible, and conveying the right information.

Examples of *Quality Parameters* which influence *Reputation* are: *Economic Convenience*, *Usability*, *Dependability*, and so on.

## **C157 Security Enforcement**

**Definition:** The *Generic Quality Parameter* which reflects the level and kind of security features offered by a *Digital Library*.

### **Relationships:**

- *Security Enforcement* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Security Enforcement* <affectedBy> *Digital Rights Management Policy*
- *Security Enforcement* <affectedBy> *Access Information*
- *Security Enforcement* <affectedBy> *Configure DL*
- *Security Enforcement* <affectedBy> *Enabling Function*
- *Security Enforcement* <affectedBy> *User Behaviour*

**Rationale:** This parameter reflects the capability of the *Digital Library* to support the management of different levels of security as expected by users, content depositors, rights owners, and librarians themselves.

*Security Enforcement* may be affected by both *Policies* and *Functions*. In particular the *Digital Rights Management Policy* impacts the level of *Security Enforcement* of a *Digital Library*, since it defines how the content has to be controlled. The *Access Information* functions and their implementation influence *Security Enforcement*, since they provide *Actors* with mechanisms for consuming *Information Objects*; the *Configure DL* functions impact *Security*, since the possibility of correct and careful configuration of the *Digital Library* is a pre-requisite for security; the *Enabling Functions*, such as *Authentication*, *Authorization*, and *Encryption*, contribute to enforce the security of a *Digital Library*. Finally, also the *User Behaviour* can affect the *Security Enforcement*, since an *Actor* may compromise security for example by a careless use of its username and password.

**Examples:** An example of a factor which influences *Security Enforcement* is the capability of preventing un-authorized access to content or the saving of local copies of copy-righted material. Within the *Policy* domain the regulations should be clearly stated in the *Digital Rights Management Policy*.

### **C158 Sustainability**

**Definition:** The *Generic Quality Parameter* which reflects the prospects of lastingness and future development of a *Digital Library*.

#### **Relationships**

- *Sustainability* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Sustainability* <affectedBy> *Change Management Policy*
- *Sustainability* <affectedBy> *Collection Development*
- *Sustainability* <affectedBy> *Compliance to Standards*
- *Sustainability* <affectedBy> *Maintenance*

**Rationale:** The *Sustainability* should take into consideration various factors, such as organizational and economical aspects of a *Digital Library*, as well as, its capability of ensuring the preservation of its *Content* and of keeping pace with future innovations.

*Sustainability* may be affected by the *Policies* adopted by the *Digital Library*, such as for example the *Change Management Policy* or the *Collection Development Policy*.

Furthermore, *Compliance To Standards* may affect *Sustainability*, since they support future development of a *Digital Library*. Also *Maintenance* may affect *Sustainability*, since it controls how the *Digital Library System* evolves over the time.

**Examples:** Examples of factors which influence *Sustainability* are: the funding scheme which ensures the economic conditions for carrying on the *Digital Library*, the skills and willingness within the organization which provides for the *Digital Library*, the presence of accurate development plans for the collections held by the *Digital Library* as well as for the software and hardware resources needed for the *Digital Library System* and the *Digital Library Management System*.

### **C159 Documentation Coverage**

**Definition:** The *Generic Quality Parameter* measuring the accuracy and clarity of the documentation describing a given *Resource*.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Documentation Coverage* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The *Documentation Coverage* parameter concern the quality of the written documentation of a *Resource*.

**Examples:** Manuals which explain the use of *Functions* are typical *Documentation Coverage* examples. Other examples are the accuracy of on-line helps, better if contextual, or the selection provided by the Frequently Asked Question sections.

### **C160 Performance**

**Definition:** The *Generic Quality Parameter* measuring the accomplishments of a *Resource*.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Performance* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*
- *Performance* <affectedBy> *Capacity*

**Rationale:** This *Generic Quality Parameter* provides an overall assessment about how well a *Resource* performs from different points of view, e.g. efficiency, effectiveness, efficacy, and so on

**Examples:** The response time upon invocation of a *Function* is an example of a generic *Performance* indicator; the presence of delays and/or jitter is an example of *Performance* indicators more tailored to the multimedia and streaming contexts; precision and recall are widely used *Performance* indicators in the information retrieval field.

### C161 Scalability

**Definition:** The *Generic Quality Parameter* measuring the capability to increase *Capacity* as much as needed.

**Relationships:**

- *Scalability* <isa> *Generic Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

### C162 Content Quality Parameter

**Definition:** A *Quality Parameter* that concerns an aspect of the *Content* main concept.

**Relationships:**

- *Content Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Authenticity* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Integrity* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Provenance* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Freshness* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Preservation Performance* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Size* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Scope* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Authoritativeness* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Fidelity* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Perceivability* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Viability* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Metadata Evaluation* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *Quality Parameters*, reflecting the variety of facets that characterize the quality of the *Content*, in particular *Information Objects*, in a *Digital Library*.

**Examples:** Content quality is a moving target in a sense, but the requirements to the level of quality of various materials in the digital library and its scope have to be presented in the *Collection Development Policy*.

### C163 Authenticity

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* reflecting whether an *Information Object* retains the property of being what it purports to be.

**Relationships:**

- *Authenticity* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The definition takes into account the results and experience of the InterPARES I project<sup>19</sup> [66][67].

**Examples:** The methods for data protection are key to assure authenticity of resources. Document sealing engines which timestamp and sign digitally every item in the digital library are an example of a solution which creates the proof that the documents they have not been modified from the original.

### C164 Authoritativeness

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring the reliability of *Resource* origin based on the trustfulness to the creator of the *Resource* or the frequency of accessing/referring to the resource by *Actors*.

#### Relationships:

- *Authoritativeness* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The authoritativeness parameter measures the quality of being widely accepted or frequently accessed. It is helpful to compare digital libraries with similar or identical scope. NISO Z39.7 Library Statistics and ISO 11620 Library Performance Indicators suggest measures of usage especially for the libraries.

**Examples:** The authoritativeness could be measured by estimating the number of visitors (general number, or different users). Another possibility is to gather transaction information (number of downloads and print-outs).

### C165 Freshness

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring the *Information Object* quality of being current and promptly updated.

#### Relationships

- *Freshness* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This parameter evaluates whether an *Information Object* and the information it carries are fresh and updated with respect to the task at hand.

**Examples:** For example, a stream of data coming from a sensor which monitors the temperature and the pressure of a patient should be updated a regular intervals in order to provide meaningful information for a physician.

Another relevant example is a *Digital Library* keeping weather forecast information, where it is important to know if this information is updated and reflects the current weather conditions.

### C166 Integrity

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring the *Information Object* quality of being complete and integer.

#### Relationships:

- *Integrity* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This parameter encompasses both the extent to which an *Information Object* is of sufficient breadth, depth, and scope for the task at hand, as pointed out in [17].

**Examples:** From the point of view of data protection, integrity should guarantee that there are no losses in the stored resources. This is an important parameter connected with the preservation of the content.

---

<sup>19</sup> <http://www.interpares.org/>

## C167 Preservation Performance

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* is used to evaluate the need of undertaking actions which would assure that the digital resources will be accessible over the long term.

**Relationships:**

- *Preservation Performance* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The *Preservation Performance* parameter helps to monitor the need to apply digital curation actions to the separate resources, collections and digital library as a whole.

**Examples:** If the policy of the digital library is to make copies of content stored on DVDs every five years, a *Preservation Performance* parameter would help to comply with this term.

## C168 Provenance

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* reporting how well origins and history of an *Information Object* are known and traced.

**Relationships:**

- *Provenance* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Provenance* <affectedBy> *Metadata*
- *Provenance* <affectedBy> *Annotation*
- *Provenance* <affectedBy> *Preservation Policy*
- *Provenance* <affectedBy> *Information Object*

**Rationale:** This quality parameter is aimed at determining how much is possible to reconstruct the history and the evolution of an *Information Object* in order to know if it fits the purpose. An *Information Object* may be derived from other *Information Objects* (e.g., due to some join and/or transformations), tracing the provenance is not always a trivial task.

In particular, when we deal with scientific data, *Provenance* of data must be traced since a scientist needs to know where the data came from and what cleaning, rescaling, or modelling was done to arrive at the data to be interpreted [1].

Note that this parameter resembles what [17] calls interpretability.

*Provenance* <affectedBy> *Metadata*, since they keep the additional information needed to trace the history of an *Information Object*.

*Provenance* <affectedBy> *Annotation*, since they allow us to trace the provenance and flow of data, report errors or remarks about a piece of data, and describing the quality or the security level of a piece of data [23]. In addition, [92] uses annotations in interactive visualization systems as a means for both capturing the history of user interaction with the visualization system and keeping track of the observations that a user may make while exploring the visualization.

*Provenance* <affectedBy> *Preservation Policy*, since it may influence the kind of *Metadata* which are kept about an *Information Object*.

**Examples:** --

## C169 Scope

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* which measures the areas of coverage of the *Content* and/or *Resources* of the *Digital Library*.

**Relationships:**

- *Scope* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The scope parameter helps to understand the coverage of a *Digital Library* both in the sense of *Content*, and in the sense of *Functionality*. While the *Size* provides quantitative insight, *Scope* is more qualitative-oriented.

**Examples:** A *Digital Library* could contain the complete collection of works of a certain author, time period, genre. This is a content-related example.

### **C170 Size**

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring the magnitude of *Resource*, *Collection* or a *Digital Library* as a whole.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Size* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*
- *Size* <isa> *Quantitative Measure*

**Rationale:** Sizes can be provided according to different measures: for example, numbers of items, pages, bytes, articles, words, images, multimedia files. The evaluation of the size of a digital library is helping the user to get an idea about the resources. Size is also important parameter for the architecture and functionality of the DL.

**Examples:** The physical size of a collection calculated in bytes is important for estimation of the migration effort.

### **C171 Fidelity**

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring the accuracy with which an electronic system reproduces given a *Resource*.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Fidelity* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The *Fidelity* parameter is used to evaluate to what degree a particular representation of a given *Resource* is different from its very first original representation.

**Examples:** The rendition of a text document may be identical to its original appearance in the word processing software used at the time of creating the document, but may also significantly differ from its original appearance especially in layout – this difference is expressed through *Fidelity*.

### **C172 Perceivability**

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring what effort a *Actor* needs to invest in order to understand and absorb a *Resource*.

#### **Relationships:**

- *Perceivability* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The *Perceivability* parameter is used to evaluate how easy a *Actor* would understand and retain the information/knowledge within a *Resource* from the Content domain. This quality parameter is essential for evaluating which resources are most likely to be well understood within a specific target group of users.

**Examples:** When numerous *resources* in the digital library represent the same topic, perceivability may help to choose those of them which are most likely to be quickly understood. Quite often images might be found as having higher perceivability than texts. Perceivability may also be used for answering the needs of special groups of users, for example providing audio content to visually impaired users.

### C173 Viability

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring whether the *Resource*'s bit stream is intact and readable with the existing technology.

#### Relationships

- *Viability* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** *Viability* is essential for preservation activities within a digital library. It would estimate whether a digital object could be read and manipulated with the existing hardware and software.

**Examples:** The minimum time specified by the supplier for the media's viability under prevailing environmental conditions.

### C174 Metadata Evaluation

**Definition:** The *Content Quality Parameter* measuring characteristics of *Metadata*.

#### Relationships

- *Metadata Evaluation* <isa> *Content Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** *Metadata Evaluation* is essential for various processes in the digital library, and most specifically in tasks related to access, preservation and operability. According to a functionality-oriented definition of Guy, Powell, and Day, "high quality metadata supports the functional requirements of the system it is designed to support". Metadata evaluation could be as simple as checking whether metadata (or specific metadata elements) are available; or it could be a more sophisticated evaluation of incomplete, inaccurate, or inconsistent metadata elements. In the most detailed case metadata evaluation would be a compound parameter consisting of several others – for example Completeness, Accuracy, Provenance, Conformance to Expectations, Timeliness, User Satisfaction, Perceivability. This combination would depend on the purpose of the metadata evaluation.

**Examples:** Completeness in the context of *Metadata evaluation* could be used to measure whether a minimal required set of elements is available in the metadata records.

### C175 Functionality Quality Parameter

**Definition:** A *Quality Parameter* that concerns an aspect of the *Functionality* main concept.

#### Relationships:

- *Functionality Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Usability* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *User Satisfaction* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Availability* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Dependability* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Robustness* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Fault Management Performance* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Capacity* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Orthogonality* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Awareness of Service* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Expectations of Service* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Impact of Service* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *Quality Parameters*, reflecting the variety of facets that characterize the quality of the *Functionality*, in particular *Functions*, of a *Digital Library*.

**Examples:** --

### **C176 Availability**

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* which indicates the ratio of the time a *Function* is ready for use to the total lifetime of the system.

**Relationships:**

- *Availability* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Availability* <affectedBy> *Robustness*
- *Availability* <affectedBy> *Fault Management*
- *Availability* <affectedBy> *Capacity*

**Rationale:** *Availability* is a fundamental parameter for assessing the quality of a *Function*, since *Actors* may be very disappointed when they try to use a *Function* and this is not available.

*Availability* may be affected by other parameters, such as *Robustness* and *Fault Management*: the former guarantees that a *Function* will continue to work and be available even in the case of bad input; the latter guarantees that a *Function* will be able to recover from an error condition and thus continue to be available. Finally, also *Capacity* may affect *Availability*, since in case of starvation of resources a *Function* may stop to be available.

*Availability* typically parallels with *Dependability*.

**Examples:** In the telephone services, high levels of availability are requested, the well-known “five-nines”, the 99,999% of up-time of the system, since nobody expects to pick up the received and to not hear the signal.

### **C177 Awareness of Service**

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* which measures how well the perspectives *Actor* of a *Digital Library* are aware of its existence and *Functions*.

**Relationships:**

- *Awareness of Service* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** To measure the *Awareness of Service*, most often surveys are used. To increase the *Awareness of Service*, awareness system could be established as a DL functionality component.

**Examples:** *Awareness of Service* for target user groups is important component of the current information literacy.

### **C178 Capacity**

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* measuring the limit on the number of requests that a *Function* can serve in a given interval of time.

**Relationships:**

- *Capacity* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** Capacity determines how many concurrent requests can be successfully served.

It may affect *Availability*, *Dependability* and *Performance*. Indeed, when a *Function* operates beyond its *Capacity*, *Availability* MAY be compromised since the *Function* may stop working, as in the case of denial of service attacks; similarly, *Dependability* and *Performance* may be negatively affected if the *Function* does not complete its works or takes too much to complete.

**Examples:** --

### **C179 Expectations of Service**

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* measuring what *Actors* believe a *Function* should offer.

**Relationships:**

- *Expectations of Service* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The expectations of service from the point of view of the digital library service can be clarified through user agreements on the quality of service (QoS) which outlines the actual service and outlines the existing framework to the user. However, users might have different expectations from their experience with other DLs or other digital services. User expectations could be studied through surveys.

**Examples:** Users expect that clicking on image thumbnail will lead to opening of a larger size and higher quality image file.

### **C180 Fault Management Performance**

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* measuring the ability of a *Function* to re-act to and recover from failures in a transparent way.

**Relationships:**

- *Fault Management Performance* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Fault Management Performance* <affectedBy> *Robustness*

**Rationale:** *Fault Management Performance* reflects the capacity of a *Function* to recover from error conditions, thus avoiding the interruption of the offered service.

It may be affected by *Robustness*, meant as the capacity of recovering from wrong inputs.

**Examples:** --

### **C181 Impact of Service**

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* measures the influence which the service offered by a *Function* have on the *Actor* knowledge and behaviour.

**Relationships:**

- *Impact of service* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The user of digital libraries does not have static skills; in the ideal case his or her knowledge is increased and the practical skills of exploring digital collections are being improved with time. This parameter has a special importance if we consider the applications of digital libraries in the educational area in particular e-Learning applications using digital libraries.

**Examples:** The user who has experience with a specific visual interface will be able to usually use similar interface. Since the user mastered how to use a specific set of functionalities organised in a particular interface, his expectation of service are also changed.

### **C182 Orthogonality**

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* which indicates to what extent different *Functions* are independent from each other, i.e. do not affect each other.

**Relationships:**

- *Orthogonality* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The *Orthogonality* measures whether sets of *Functions* are independent from each other. DLs with full functional orthogonality or at least pronounced orthogonality will usually be much more intuitive to their users than DLs with a high degree of functional overlap.

*Orthogonality* may affect *Usability* and may also affect *User Satisfaction*, when the usage of the DL might get too complicated.

**Examples:** The idea of orthogonality is that the same function is invoked by the same commands, from the same menu entries.

### C183 Dependability

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* measuring the ability of a DL to perform a *Function* under stated conditions for a specified period of time.

**Relationships:**

- *Dependability* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Dependability* <affectedBy> *Capability*

**Rationale:** *Dependability* reflects whether a given *Function* works correctly without producing errors.

*Capacity* may affect *Dependability*, since in case of starvation of resources a *Function* may not work properly.

**Examples:** When a *Actor* types the URL address of a portal which gives access to a *Digital Library*, he/she expects that the address is correctly resolved and to be redirected to the correct site and not to a wrong one.

### C184 Robustness

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* measuring the resilience to ill-formed input or incorrect invocation sequences of a *Function*.

**Relationships:**

- *Robustness* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** *Robustness* is a key parameter which may affect other *Quality Parameters*, such as *Security Enforcement* or *Availability*. Indeed, many kinds of attack which compromise the functioning of a service or gain un-authorized access to services, are based on ill-formed input, such as buffer overflows.

**Examples:** --

### C185 Usability

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* which indicates the ease of use of a given *Function*.

**Relationships:**

- *Usability* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *Usability* <affectedBy> *Orthogonality*

**Rationale:** The *Usability* reports how much a given *Function* makes it easy for a *Actor* to achieve its goals.

It can be evaluated by using different *Measures*: for examples, the *Actor* can indicate on a subjective scale the degree of *Usability* of a *Function*, or the time need to complete a task can be measured.

**Examples:** --

### C186 User Satisfaction

**Definition:** The *Functionality Quality Parameter* which indicates how much an *Actor* is satisfied by a given *Function*.

**Relationships:**

- *User Satisfaction* <isa> *Functionality Quality Parameter*
- *User Satisfaction* <affectedBy> *Usability*
- *User Satisfaction* <affectedBy> *Documentation Coverage*
- *User Satisfaction* <affectedBy> *Performance*
- *User Satisfaction* <affectedBy> *Availability*
- *User Satisfaction* <affectedBy> *Dependability*
- *User Satisfaction* <affectedBy> *Orthogonality*

**Rationale:** The *User Satisfaction* parameter reflect how much an *Actor* is satisfied by the capabilities offered by a given *Function*. Many factors can influence the *User Satisfaction*, such as the *Usability*, the *Documentation Coverage*, the *Performance*, the *Availability*, the *Dependability* and so on.

**Examples:** --

**C187 User Quality Parameter**

**Definition:** A *Quality Parameter* that concerns an aspect of the *User Domain* main concept.

**Relationships:**

- *User Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *User Behaviour* <isa> *User Quality Parameter*
- *User Activeness* <isa> *User Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *Quality Parameters*, reflecting the variety of facets that characterize the quality of the *User Domain*, in particular *Actors*, of a *Digital Library*.

**Examples:** --

**C188 User Activeness**

**Definition:** A *User Quality Parameter* that reflects how much an *Actor* is active and interacts with a *Digital Library*.

**Relationships:**

- *User Activeness* <isa> *User Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This parameter concerns whether and how much an *Actor* is active with respect to the *Content* and *Functionality* offered by a *Digital Library*.

**Examples:** Factors that influence this parameter are, for example, whether an *Actor* frequently contributes his own *Content* to the *Digital Library* or whether an *Actor* often participates in discussions with other *Actors*, perhaps by using *Annotations*.

**C189 User Behaviour**

**Definition:** A *User Quality Parameter* that reflects how an *Actor* behaves and interacts with a *Digital Library*.

**Relationships:**

- *User Behaviour* <isa> *User Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This parameter concerns whether and how much an *Actor* abides by the *Policies* and regulations of a *Digital Library*.

**Examples:** Factors that influence this parameter are, for example, if an *Actor* respects the copyright on the *Resources* of a *Digital Library* or if he makes un-authorized copies of such material.

### **C190 Policy Quality Parameter**

**Definition:** A *Quality Parameter* that concerns an aspect of the top-level *Policy* concept.

**Relationships:**

- *Policy Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Policy Consistency* <isa> *Policy Quality Parameter*
- *Policy Precision* <isa> *Policy Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *Quality Parameters*, reflecting the variety of facets that characterize the quality of a set of *Policies*.

**Examples:** --

### **C191 Policy Consistency**

**Definition:** A *Policy Quality Parameter* that characterises the extent to which a set of *policies* are free of contradictions.

**Relationships:**

- *Policy Consistency* <isa> *Policy Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This parameter concerns whether or not a set of *Policy* (each of them being well defined) are free of contradictions.

**Examples:** --

### **C192 Policy Precision**

**Definition:** A *Policy Quality Parameter* that represents the extent to which a set of *policies* have impacts that are defined and do not have unintended consequences.

**Relationships:**

- *Policy Precision* <isa> *Policy Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

### **C193 Architecture Quality Parameter**

**Definition:** A *Quality Parameter* that concerns an aspect of the *Architecture Domain* main concept.

**Relationships:**

- *Architecture Quality Parameter* <isa> *Quality Parameter*
- *Redundancy* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*
- *Ease of Administration* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*
- *Load Balancing Performance* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*
- *Ease of Installation* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*
- *Log Quality* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*
- *Maintenance Performance* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*
- *Compliance to Standards* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This is a family of *Quality Parameters*, reflecting the variety of facets that characterize the quality of the *Architecture Domain*, in particular *Architectural Components*, of a *Digital Library System*.

**Examples:** --

### **C194 Ease of Administration**

**Definition:** The *Architecture Quality Parameter* measuring the presence and easiness of use of tools for configuring, administering, and monitoring *System Architecture Components*.

**Relationships:**

- *Ease of Administration* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The presence of good administration tools is crucial for configuring and monitoring the functioning of complex and distributed systems, as *Digital Library Systems* potentially are.

**Examples:** --

### **C195 Compliance to Standards**

**Definition:** The *Architecture Quality Parameter* measuring the degree to which standards have been adopted in developing an *Architectural Component*.

**Relationships:**

- *Compliance to Standards* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** This parameter influences both the *Interoperability Support*, because the adoption of standards increase the easiness of interoperation with other entities, and the *Sustainability* of a *Digital Library*, since open standards support keeping up a *Architectural Component* with future technological developments.

**Examples:** Open source standards are a relevant example of standards that may help in keeping an *Architectural Component* updated and interoperable.

### **C196 Ease of Installation**

**Definition:** The *Architecture Quality Parameter* measuring the easiness of installation and configuration of *Software Components*.

**Relationships:**

- *Ease of Installation* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The *Ease of Installation* parameter concerns the presence of tools and procedures for seamlessly installing and deploying *Software Components*, as well as, adding new *System Architecture Components* to a running *Digital Library System*.

**Examples:** --

### **C197 Load Balancing Performance**

**Definition:** The *Architecture Quality Parameter* measuring the capacity to evenly spread and distributed work across *System Architecture Components*.

**Relationships:**

- *Load Balancing Performance* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** *Load Balancing Performance*, together with *Redundancy*, may help in improving the overall performances and responsiveness of a *Digital Library System*.

**Examples:** --

### **C198 Log Quality**

**Definition:** The *Architecture Quality Parameter* measuring the presence and accuracy of logs which monitor the activity and functioning of *System Architecture Components*.

**Relationships:**

- *Log Quality* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** The presence of accurate logs is crucial for understanding, analysing, debugging, and improving the functioning of a *Digital Library System*.

Furthermore, log analysis can be an effective way of understanding the *Actor* behaviour and personalize the *Digital Library System* accordingly; therefore logs can be a useful input for the *Personalize* functions and for creating *Actor Profiles*.

**Examples:** There are various standards for creating logs. For example, in the case of Web, there is W3C Extended Log Format [99].

### **C199 Maintenance Performance**

**Definition:** The *Architecture Quality Parameter* concerning the design and implementation of software and hardware maintenance plans for *Architectural Components*.

**Relationships:**

- *Maintenance Performance* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*
- *Maintenance Performance* <affectedBy> *Change Management Policy*

**Rationale:** *Maintenance Performance* concerns the design of plans for keeping *Architectural Components* updated with research and technological advances.

*Change Management Policy* may affect *Maintenance Performance*, since it regulates the change process in a *Digital Library*.

It may influence *Sustainability*, since it involves keeping the current system properly functioning and evolving it for facing future technological developments.

**Examples:** A maintenance plan may concern programmed hardware updates, controlled migration towards new software and hardware environments, and so on.

### **C200 Redundancy**

**Definition:** The *Architecture Quality Parameter* measuring the degree of (partial) duplication of *System Architecture Components* to decrease the probability of a system failure.

**Relationships**

- *Redundancy* <isa> *Architecture Quality Parameter*

**Rationale:** A redundant architecture helps in improving the overall performances of a system and may improve the *Availability*, *Dependability* and *Robustness* of a *Digital Library System*.

**Examples:** --

### **C201 Architecture Domain**

**Definition:** One of the six main concepts characterising the digital library universe. It represents the various aspects related to the software systems concretely realising the digital library universe.

**Relationship**

- *Digital Library* <definedBy> *Architecture Domain*
- *Digital Library System* <definedBy> *Architecture Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* <definedBy> *Architecture Domain*
- *Architecture Domain* <consistOf> *Architectural Component*

**Rationale:** The *Architecture Domain* captures concepts and relationships characterising the two software systems playing an active role in the DL universe, i.e. DLSs and DLMSs. Unfortunately, the importance of this foundational concept has been largely underestimated in the past. The importance of its domain and its modeling is described in Section II.2.7.

**Examples:** --

## C202 Architectural Component

**Definition:** A constituent part or an element of a software system implementing one or more *Functions* that can be autonomously managed and that contributes to realize the *Architecture* of a *Digital Library System*.

### Relationship

- *Architectural Component* <isa> *Resource*
- *Architectural Component* <yield> *Function*
- *Architectural Component* <hasQuality> *Quality Parameter* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Architectural Component* is <regulatedBy> *Policy* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Architectural Component* <hasProfile> *Component Profile*
- *Architectural Component* <conformTo> *Framework Specification*
- *Architectural Component* <use> *Architectural Components*
- *Architectural Component* <composedBy> *Architectural Components*
- *Architectural Component* <conflictWith> *Architectural Components*
- *Architectural Component* <has> *Interface*
- *Software Architecture Component* <isa> *Architectural Component*
- *System Architecture Component* <isa> *Architectural Component*

**Rationale** The notion of component has been introduced in modern software systems to represent “elements that can be reused or replaced”. By exploiting such an approach systems gain the potentiality to be:

- Flexible - users’ needs change over time, even while the system is being developed. It is important to be able to apply changes to the system later. Moreover, it should be possible/easy to fix the bugs;
- Affordable - both to buy and to maintain. Reuse and replacement feature of the component oriented approach contribute to reduce the "costs".

An *Architectural Component* is a *Resource* in the digital library universe. In particular, this kind of *Resource* becomes relevant in the context of *Digital Library Systems* and *Digital Library Management Systems* that are in charge to concretely realize the *Digital Library*. Being a *Resource* to be managed such components should have a description, i.e. *Component Profile*, characterising it and promoting its correct usage. This description may assume diverse forms ranging from human oriented description, e.g. a textual description in natural language, to a machine understandable one, e.g. the WSDL as in the case of web services. Neither statements nor constraints are imposed on the *Component Profile* associated with each *Architectural Component*.

### Examples

Architectural Components are classified in two main categories: *Software Architecture Components* and *System Architecture Components*. These components are the constituents of a *Software Architecture* and *System Architecture* respectively. Examples of *Software Architecture Components* and *System Architecture Component* are presented in the respective sections.

## C203 Software Architecture Component

**Definition** An *Architectural Component* contributing to implement the *Software Architecture* of a system.

### Relationship

- *Software Architecture Component* <isa> *Architectural Component*
- *Software Architecture Component* <isa> *Resource* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Architecture Component* <yield> *Function* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Architecture Component* <hasQuality> *Quality Parameter* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Software Architecture Component* is <regulatedBy> *Policy* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Software Architecture Component* <hasProfile> *Component Profile* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Architecture Component* <conformTo> *Framework Specification* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Architecture Component* <use> *Software Architecture Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Architecture Component* is <composedBy> *Software Architecture Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Architecture Component* <conflictWith> *Software Architecture Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Architecture Component* <has> *Interface* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <isa> *Software Architecture Component*
- *Interface* <isa> *Software Architecture Component*

**Rationale** The notion of component has been introduced in modern software systems to represent “elements that can be reused or replaced”. The advantages of such an approach in implementing software systems are introduced in Section II.2.7 Architecture Domain.

This notion may have different manifestations in current systems. In particular, thanks to the fact that *Software Architecture Components* (being *Architectural Components*) may in turn be composed of smaller and smaller parts (<composedBy>), it is possible to model *Software Architecture Components* at different levels of abstraction. For instance, a *Software Architecture Component* implementing a Web Service in charge to provide a bunch of *Functions* may consist of smaller *Software Architecture Components* (usually logical components the whole service is organised in) each implementing specific sub-tasks needed to accomplish the expected component functions. Each of such smaller *Software Architecture Components* is in turn organised in packages and classes (smaller *Software Architecture Components*) effectively containing the code (program instructions, data structures, etc.) implementing a constituent piece of the main *Software Architecture Component*.

**Examples:**

- A service in a system following the Service Oriented Architecture.
- A software library, i.e. one or several files that either are necessary for the execution/running of the *Software Architecture Component* or add feature to it once co-deployed on the same *Hosting Node*.
- A software package in object-oriented programming. It is a named group of related classes (another example of *Software Architecture Component*). Classes are groups of methods (set of instructions) and variables.

## C204 Software Component

**Definition** The *Software Architecture Component* representing a program coded to provide a set of Functions.

### Relationship

- *Software Component* <isa> *Software Architecture Component*
- *Software Component* <isa> *Architectural Component* (inherited from *Software Architecture Component*)
- *Software Component* <isa> *Resource* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <yield> *Function* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <hasQuality> *Quality Parameter* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Software Component* <regulatedBy> *Policy* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *Software Component* <regulatedBy> *License*
- *Software Component* <hasProfile> *Component Profile* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <conformTo> *Framework Specification* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <use> *Software Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <composedBy> *Software Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <conflictWith> *Software Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <has> *Interface* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Software Component* <representedBy> *Information Object*
- *Software Component* <realisedBy> *Computational Component*

**Rationale** The *Software Component* is the core of the component-oriented approach when applied to Software systems. This approach promotes software reuse and replacement, and thus it makes system development potentially “cheap”.

**Examples:** --

## C205 Application Framework

**Definition:** A *Software Architecture Component* representing a middleware, i.e., a software that connect and support the operation of other *Software Architecture Components*, available at the *Hosting Nodes*. It provides the run-time environment for the *Running Component*.

### Relationship

- *Application Framework* <isa> *Software Component*
- *Application Framework* <support> *Running Component*

**Rationale:** The middleware guarantees proper operation of *Architectural Components*. The application framework influences the way in which components are implemented. It MUST be provided before the deployment and configuration of the components. For instance, in the case of components relying on an application framework that offers a SOAP library, the components are implemented expecting that such a library is available on the hosting node.

**Examples:**

- Apache Tomcat (<http://tomcat.apache.org/>)

## C206 Interface

**Definition:** A *Software Architecture Component* representing a set of methods and parameters implemented by an *Architectural Component*. The client of such an *Architectural Component* may rely on them while interacting with it.

### Relationship

- *Interface* <isa> *Software Architecture Component*
- *Architectural Component* <has> *Interface*
- *Framework Specification* <prescribe> *Interface*
- *Component Profile* <profile> *Interface*

**Rationale:** The *Interface* encapsulates knowledge about the component, i.e. the rest of the system can use the component according to the patterns enabled by the *interface(s)*.

### Examples:

- OAI-PMH [135] prescribed the *Interface* an *Architectural Component* acting as OAI compliant data provider [134] must implement in order to serve an *Architectural Component* willing to act as OAI application providers

## C207 Framework Specification

**Definition:** The *Software Architecture Component* prescribing (<prescribe>) the set of *Interfaces* and protocols an *Architectural Component* should conform to (<conformTo>) in order to interact with the other *Architectural Components* of the same system by design.

### Relationship

- *Framework Specification* <isa> *Software Architecture Component*
- *Architectural Component* <conformTo> *Framework Specification*
- *Framework Specification* <prescribe> *Interface*

**Rationale:** The notion of Framework Specification is needed to capture to operational context an *Architectural Component* has been designed to operate in.

### Examples:

- Enterprise JavaBeans
- Component Object Model

## C208 System Architecture Component

**Definition** An *Architectural Component* contributing to implement the *System Architecture* of a system.

### Relationship

- *System Architecture Component* <isa> *Architectural Component*
- *System Architecture Component* <isa> *Resource* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *System Architecture Component* <yield> *Function* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *System Architecture Component* <hasQuality> *Quality Parameter* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *System Architecture Component* <regulatedBy> *Policy* (inherited from *Resource*)
- *System Architecture Component* <hasProfile> *Component Profile* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)

- *System Architecture Component* <conformTo> *Framework Specification* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *System Architecture Component* <use> *Architectural Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *System Architecture Component* <composedBy> *System Architecture Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *System Architecture Component* <conflictWith> *System Architecture Components* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *System Architecture Component* <has> *Interface* (inherited from *Architectural Component*)
- *Running Component* <isa> *System Architecture Component*
- *Hosting Node* <isa> *System Architecture Component*

**Rationale** The notion of component has been introduced in modern software systems to represent “elements that can be reused or replaced”. The advantages of such an approach in implementing software systems are introduced in Section II.2.7 Architecture Domain as well as discussed in the *Architectural Component* definition.

**Examples:**

- An server ready to host and run (*Hosting Node*) the software (*Software Component*) implementing a certain *Function*, e.g. the *Search*

## C209 Running Component

**Definition:** The *Architectural Component* realizing a *Software Component*.

**Relationship**

- *Running Component* <isa> *Architectural Component*
- *Running Component* <invoke> *Running Components*
- *Running Component* <hostedBy> *Hosting Node*

**Rationale:** The concrete realization of the code captured by the notion of *Software Component* in a concrete hardware, i.e., it corresponds to the standard notion of software process.

**Examples:**

- The running web server implementing the user interface of the DELOS Digital Library (<http://www.delos.info>)

## C210 Hosting Node

**Definition** A hardware device providing computational and storage capabilities such that (i) it is networked, (ii) it is capable of hosting components, and (iii) its usage is regulated by *policies*.

**Relationship**

- *Hosting Node* <isa> *System Architecture Component*
- *Running Component* <hostedBy> *Hosting Node*

**Rationale:** *Hosting nodes* being *System Architecture Components* (and thus *Architectural Components*) should be equipped with *Component Profiles* that represent their description. An example of usage of such information is the automatic matchmaking process used to assign a *Software Component* to the most appropriate *Hosting Node* for its deployment (i.e. the creation of the *Running Component*) by relying on its descriptive characteristics.

**Examples:**

- The server equipped with the bunch of software needed to host and run the *Software Component* implementing the user interface of the DELOS Digital Library (<http://www.delos.info>)

## C211 Software Architecture

**Definition:** The set of *Software Architecture Components* organised to form a system.

**Relationship**

- *Software Architecture* <consistOf> *Software Architecture Component*

**Rationale:** Each software system is characterised by a set of software pieces organised in a structure making them capable to work together. This organised set of software is the *Software Architecture*. To help software engineers in designing their systems a set of well-proven generic scheme for solution of recurring design problems have been identified, i.e. software architecture patterns [39]. Patterns capture existing, well-proven experience in software development and help to promote good design practise. The Reference Architecture envisaged in Section I.5 and constituting an important part of the Digital Library development framework is a pattern for *Digital Library Systems*. Similarly to patterns, it is important to recall that many Reference Architectures can be designed, each dealing with a specific and recurring problem in designing or implementing DLSs. Moreover, different Reference Architectures can be used to construct DLSs with specific properties.

**Examples:**

- Client-Server architecture
- Service-oriented Architecture

## C212 System Architecture

**Definition:** The set of *System Architecture Components* organised to form a system.

**Relationship**

- *System Architecture* <consistOf> *System Architecture Component*

**Rationale:** Each software system is characterised by the set of its constituents. This Reference Model classifies the constituents of a software system along two dimensions, the one of the *Software Architecture* and the one of the *System Architecture*. The *System Architecture*, being an architecture is an organised set of constituents. In this case constituents are *System Architecture Components*, namely *Running Instances* and *Hosting Nodes*. Because of (i) the strong relations between *Running Instances* and *Software Components*, i.e., a *Running Component* is the result of the deployment of a *Software Component*, and (ii) the fact that *Software Components* are the main constituents of the *Software Architecture* of the system, there is a strong relation between *Software Architecture* and *System Architecture*. A *System Architecture* is one of the possible instances that are obtainable according to the *Software Architecture* of the system in use. It is well known that by exploiting a software system developed according to a monolithic application pattern it is not possible to realise a system having a distributed *System Architecture*. The more flexible is the *Software Architecture* a system adopt, the larger will be the potential range of application scenarios it can be successfully exploited.

**Examples:**

- The set of servers and services realising the DELOS Digital Library (<http://www.delos.info>)

## C213 Purpose

**Definition:** The motivation characterizing the <associatedWith> relationship.

### Relationships:

- *Resource* <associatedWith> *Resource* to a certain *Purpose*

**Rationale:** The <associatedWith> relation is one of the powerful ones allowing to build compound *Resources*, i.e., *Resources* obtained by combining existing constituent *Resources* as to form a new knowledge bundle having a value added with respect to the single *Resources* when considered as single island of information. Various kind of associations are possible, and this diversity is captured by the *Purpose* concept attached to each instance of the <associatedWith> relation.

### Examples:

An *Information Object* representing an experiment (itself composed of various *Information Objects* representing, e.g., the dataset the experiment is carried on, the dataset representing the outcomes, the description of the procedure adopted) is <associatedWith> the *Information Object* representing the scientific publication in an outstanding Journal of the filed with the <Purpose> of scholarly dissemination.

## C214 Region

**Definition:** A contiguous portion of a given *Resource* with the desired degree of granularity identified in order to anchor a given *Annotation* to it.

### Relationships:

- *Resource* <hasAnnotation> *Annotation* about a *Region*

**Rationale:** The idea of “contiguous portion” of a *Resource* resembles and complies with the concept of segment introduced in Navarro et Al. [156]. The granularity of such a kind of “identifier” can vary according to the meaningful ways of locating a part of a *Resource*, which depend on the actual specialisation of the *Resource* we are dealing with. As a consequence, we can have *Regions* which anchor an *Annotation* to the whole *Resource*, as well as, *Regions* able to anchor an *Annotation* to a specific part of a *Resource*.

**Examples:** A piece of text, e.g. a paragraph, of a *Information Object* representing this volume is a *Region* an *Annotation* can be attached to.

## C215 Digital Library

**Definition:** An organization, which might be virtual, that comprehensively collects, manages, and preserves for the long term rich *Information Objects*, and offers to its *Actors* specialized *Functions* on those *Information Objects*, of measurable quality, expressed by *Quality Parameters*, and according to codified *Policies*.

### Relationship

- *Digital Library* <manage> *Resource*
- *Digital Library* <manage> *Information Object*
- *Digital Library* <serve> *Actor*
- *Digital Library* <offer> *Function*
- *Digital Library* <agreeWith> *Policy*
- *Digital Library* <tender> *Quality Parameter*
- *Digital Library System* <support> *Digital Library*
- *Digital Library* is <definedBy> *Resource Domain*

- *Digital Library* is <definedBy> *Content Domain*
- *Digital Library* is <definedBy> *User Domain*
- *Digital Library* is <definedBy> *Functionality Domain*
- *Digital Library* is <definedBy> *Policy Domain*
- *Digital Library* is <definedBy> *Quality Domain*

**Rationale:** Digital Library is a complex universe and usually the term “digital library” is used with many different semantics. This Reference Model introduces three notions of systems (cf. Sec. I.2) active in this universe, i.e. *Digital Library*, *Digital Library System*, and *Digital Library Management System*. The former is the more abstract among the three and represents the set of *Information Objects*, *Actors*, *Functions*, *Policy*, and *Quality Parameters* forming the digital library and perceived by *End-Users* as the service they can exploit. This service is supported by a running system, i.e. the *Digital Library System*.

**Examples:**

- The DELOS Digital Library (<http://www.delos.info>)
- The European Library (<http://www.theeuropeanlibrary.org>)
- The National Science Digital Library (<http://nsdl.org>)

## C216 Digital Library System

**Definition:** A software system that is based on a given (possibly distributed) *Architecture* and provides all *Functions* required by a particular *Digital Library*. *Actors* interact with a *Digital Library* through the corresponding *Digital Library System*.

**Relationship**

- *Digital Library System* <support> *Digital Library*
- *Digital Library System* is <definedBy> *Resource Domain*
- *Digital Library System* is <definedBy> *Content Domain*
- *Digital Library System* is <definedBy> *User Domain*
- *Digital Library System* is <definedBy> *Functionality Domain*
- *Digital Library System* is <definedBy> *Policy Domain*
- *Digital Library System* is <definedBy> *Quality Domain*
- *Digital Library System* is <definedBy> *Architecture Domain*
- *Digital Library System* <has> *Software Architecture*
- *Digital Library System* <has> *System Architecture*

**Rationale:** This Reference Model introduces three notions of systems (cf. Sec. I.2) active in the universe, i.e. the *Digital Library*, the *Digital Library System*, and the *Digital Library Management System*. The *Digital Library System* is the running software system serving the *Digital Library*. As any running software systems it is characterised by two facets, its *Software Architecture* and its *System Architecture*. The former consists of a set of *Software Architecture Components*, i.e., *Software Components* and *Interfaces*, that compose the software implementing the system. The *System Architecture* is the set of *System Architecture Components* that form the running system, namely the servers, *Hosting Nodes*, and the processes, *Running Components*, resulting from the deployment of the *Software Components*.

**Examples:**

- The set of servers, services, and software realising the DELOS Digital Library (<http://www.delos.info>)

- The set of servers, services, and software realising The European Library (<http://www.theeuropeanlibrary.org>)
- The set of servers, services, and software realising the National Science Digital Library (<http://nsdl.org>)

## C217 Digital Library Management System

**Definition:** A generic software system that provides the appropriate software infrastructure both (i) to produce and administer a *Digital Library System* incorporating the suite of *Functions* considered foundational for *Digital Libraries*, and (ii) to integrate additional *software components* offering more refined, specialized, or advanced functionality.

### Relationship:

- *Digital Library Management System* <deploy> *Digital Library System*
- *Digital Library Management System* <extend> *Digital Library System*
- *Digital Library Management System* is <definedBy> *Resource Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* is <definedBy> *Content Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* is <definedBy> *User Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* is <definedBy> *Functionality Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* is <definedBy> *Policy Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* is <definedBy> *Quality Domain*
- *Digital Library Management System* is <definedBy> *Architecture Domain*

**Rationale:** This Reference Model introduces three notions of systems (cf. Sec. I.2) active in the universe, i.e. the *Digital Library*, the *Digital Library System*, and the *Digital Library Management System*. The *Digital Library Management System* (DLMS) is the system that provides *DL Designers*, *DL System Administrators*, and *DL Application Developers* with *Functions* supporting their tasks (cf. Sec. I.4). Depending on the set of *Functions* DLMS provide *Actors* with, different types of such systems can be implemented (cf. Sec. I.2).

### Examples:

- OpenDLib (<http://www.opendlib.com>): the DLMS used to create and maintain the DELOS Digital Library (<http://www.delos.info>).
- DILIGENT [62]: a prototypical DLMS capable to deploy *Digital Library Systems* by relying on a set of *Resources* ranging from *Software Components* to *Hosting Nodes* dynamically gathered through Grid technologies.
- The DelosDLMS [175]: a DLMS built by integrating software and services developed by DELOS partners.

### III.4 Relations' Hierarchy

- [ Generic Relations ]<sup>20</sup>
  - . isa
  - . [ Resource Relations ]
    - . . R1 identifiedBy
    - . . R2 hasFormat
      - . . . R3 expressionOf
      - . . . R4 conformTo
    - . . R5 hasQuality
    - . . R6 regulatedBy
    - . . R7 hasMetadata
      - . . . R8 describedBy
      - . . . R9 modelledBy (isa User Relation)
      - . . . R10 hasProfile (isa Architecture Relation)
    - . . R11 hasAnnotation
    - . . R12 expressedBy
    - . . R13 hasPart
      - . . . R14 composedBy (isa Architecture Relation)
    - . . R15 associatedWith
      - . . . R16 use (isa Architecture Relation)
      - . . . R17 conflictWith (isa Architecture Relation)
    - . . R18 invokes
    - . . R19 belongTo
    - . . . R25 profile
  - . [ Content Relations ]
    - . . R20 hasEdition
    - . . R21 hasView
    - . . R22 hasManifestation
    - . . R23 hasIntension
    - . . R24 hasExtension
  - . [ User Relations ]
    - . . R26 perform
    - . . R9 modelledBy (isa hasMetadata)
    - . . R27 play
    - . . R19 belongTo (isa Resource Relation)
  - . [ Functionality Relations ]
    - . . R28 interactWith
    - . . R29 influencedBy
    - . . R30 actOn
    - . . R31 create
      - . . . R32 createAnnotation
      - . . . R33 createVersion
      - . . . R34 createView
      - . . . R35 createManifestation

---

<sup>20</sup> “Classifiers”, i.e. items added to the hierarchy for organisational purposes are marked [in squared brackets].

- . . R36 retrieve
- . . . R37 return
- . . R38 produce
- . . R39 issue
- . [ Policy Relations ]
- . . R6 regulatedBy (isa Resource Relation)
- . . R40 govern
- . . . R41 prescribe
- . . R42 antonymOf
- . . R43 influence
- . [ Quality Relations ]
- . . R44 expressAssessment
- . . R45 evaluatedBy
- . . R46 measuredBy
- . . R47 affectedBy
- . . R48 accordTo
- . [ Architecture Relations ]
- . . R49 implement
- . . . R50 realisedBy
- . . . R51 support
- . . . R52 hostedBy
- . . R14 composedBy (isa hasPart)
- . . R16 use (isa associatedWith)
- . . R17 conflictWith (isa associatedWith)
- . . R10 hasProfile (isa hasMetadata)
- . . R4 conformTo (isa hasFormat)
- . . . R41 prescribe (isa govern)
- . . R25 profile (isa belongTo)

### III.5 Reference Model Relations' Definitions

#### R1 identifiedBy

**Definition:** The relation connecting a *Resource* to its *Resource Identifier*.

**Rationale:** The issue of univocally identifying the constituents of a system is a foundational task for their management. This relation captures the *Resource Identifier* attached to each *Resource* for this identification purpose. Various types of resource identifiers have been proposed, for a discussion about them please refer to the *Resource Identifier* concept.

Each *Resource* must have at least one *Resource Identifier*. Each *Resource Identifier* can be assigned to one *Resource* only.

**Examples:**

#### R2 hasFormat

**Definition:** The relation connecting a *Resource* to its *Resource Format*, which establishes the attributes or properties of the *resource*, their types, cardinalities and so on.

**Rationale:** One *resource* must have exactly one format, whereas the same format can (obviously) be used by many resources.

This relation is commonly called “instance of” in object models. However, in order to avoid confusion with the instance of relation of the present model, it is given a different name.

**Examples: --**

#### R3 expressionOf

**Definition:** The relation connecting a *Resource Format* to the *Ontology* which defines the terms of the schema and states the main constraints on them.

**Rationale:** A schema gives a concrete status to the terms abstractly defined in an ontology, by establishing implementation details such as the data type of the primitive concepts of the ontology. The schema must retain the constraints expressed in the ontology and may consistently add other constraints, reflecting the implementation decisions taken in the schema.

The same ontology can be expressed in many schemas, while a schema is preferably the expression of a single ontology, even though for practical reasons, it is possible that a schema borrows from many ontologies. In this latter case, the schema operates a sort of integration of several ontologies.

**Examples: --**

#### R4 conformTo

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Architectural Components* to *Framework Specifications* they comply with.

**Rationale:** *Framework Specification* is the *Software Architecture Component* that describes the design of the set of *Architectural Components* planned to form the *Software Architecture* of a system. *Framework Specification* <prescribe> *Interfaces Architectural Components* should implement. The compliance with the *Framework Specification* guarantee the *Architectural Components* of being interoperable with the others *Architectural Components* of the same system by design.

**Examples:**

- A *Framework Specification* may <prescribe> the publish/subscribe *Interface* each *Software Component* of a system must implement in order to conform to the publish/subscribe mechanism planned for such a system.

## **R5 hasQuality**

**Definition:** The relation connecting a *Resource* to its *Quality Parameters*.

**Rationale:** A resource will have as many *Quality Parameters* as the number of quality features it is associated to. The same *Quality Parameter* can be associated with many *Resources*.

**Examples:** --

## **R6 regulatedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Resources* to the *Policies* regulating them.

**Rationale:** This relation is used to show what *Resources* are being regulated by a specific *Policy*.

Each *Resource* may be regulated by more *Policies*. The same *Policy* may regulate more *Resources*.

**Examples:** Saving a local copy of an *Information Object* by an *Actor* is regulated by *Digital Rights*.

## **R7 hasMetadata**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Resources* to *Information Objects* for management purposes.

**Rationale:** In “classic” Digital Library models, *metadata* is a concept, that is a primary notion modelling a clearly defined category of objects in the domain of discourse. However, it depends from the context whether an object is or is not metadata. For instance, a relational tuple describing an event (such as an artistic performance) can be a primary information object in some context (e.g. in a database storing the programme of the theatre season), and *metadata* in a different context (e.g. in a repository storing a digital representation of the performance). For this reason, the notion of *metadata* is more clearly seen as a role that an information object plays to another information object (more precisely, to a resource), hence it is defined as a relation.

From this relation, the notion of *Metadata* is then derived, as any information object that is metadata of a resource. In so doing, we are following the same linguistic convention that in everyday speech leads to the usage of the word “father” as a noun.

**Examples:** This volume is an *Information Object* associated to another *Information Object* representing the its Dublin Core metadata record via the <hasMetadata>.

## **R8 describedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Resources* to *Information Objects* to describing them.

**Rationale:** This is a specialisation of the <hasMetadata>. A *Resource* can be associated with many descriptive *Information Objects*. A descriptive *Information Object* is associated to one *Resource*.

**Examples:**

## **R9 modelledBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Actors* to *Actor Profiles* representing them.

**Rationale:** This is a specialisation of the *<hasMetadata>*. An *Actor* may have many *Actor Profiles*. An *Actor Profile* must be associated to one *Actor*.

**Examples:**

## **R10 hasProfile**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Architectural Components* to *Component Profiles* representing them.

**Rationale:** This is a specialisation of the *<hasMetadata>*. An *Architectural Component* can be associated with *Component Profiles*. A *Component Profile* must be associated with one *Architectural Component*.

**Examples:**

## **R11 hasAnnotation**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Resources* to *Information Objects* to add an interpretative value to a certain *Region*.

**Rationale:** This relation is analogous to *<hasMetadata>*. *Annotations* are sometimes modelled as concepts, however they are more clearly seen as roles that *information objects* play to *resources* in specific contexts. Hence *annotation* (cf. Sec. III.3 C14) is defined as the range of the *<hasAnnotation>* relation. Happily, this choice settles the long-standing issue whether annotations are to be considered as objects or as metadata.

**Examples: --**

## **R12 expressedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Resources* to *Information Objects* materialising them.

**Rationale:** This relation has been introduced to capture the materialisation of otherwise abstract *Resources*. It is mainly intended for the materialisations of *Resources* like *Policy* and *Quality Parameter* but can be applied to any type of *Resource*.

A *Resource* can be associated to many *Information Objects* materialising it in different ways. A materialising *Information Object* must be associated with one *Resource*.

**Examples: --**

## **R13 hasPart**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Resources* to their constituent *Resources*.

**Rationale:** The relation where a *Resource* “child” is a subset or part of the “parent” *Resource*. This “part of” association may have two different natures: the aggregative and the compositional one. In the aggregative nature the single parts stand by their selves and may be constituents of any number of *Resources*. In the case of compositional nature the whole strongly owns its parts, i.e. if the whole *resource* is copied or deleted, its parts are copied or deleted with it.

**Examples:**

- A book has part the preface, the chapters, the bibliography

## **R14 composedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Architectural Components* to constituent *Architectural Components*.

**Rationale:** This is the specialisation of the <hasPart> relation in the case of *Architectural Components*. Also in this case the relation can implement the aggregative and the compositional nature of the “part of”.

An *Architectural Component* can be composed by many *Architectural Components*. The same *Architectural Component* can be a component of many *Architectural Components*.

**Examples:** --

## **R15 associatedWith**

**Definition:** The relation connecting a *Resource* to the *Resources* which are linked to the former according to a certain *Purpose*.

**Rationale:** In addition to the explicitly identified pool of relations connecting *Resources*, this relation allows to specify cross-resource links with respect to a well-known *Purpose*.

No constraints about the cardinality of this relation are established, i.e. a *Resource* may be connected to zero or more *Resources* through the <associatedWith> with a certain *Purpose*; a *Resource* may or may appear as the second term of a <associatedWith> relationship with a certain *Purpose*.

**Examples:** --

## **R16 use**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Architectural Components* to *Architectural Components* they use.

**Rationale:** Architectural Components are the constituents of the architectures of all the digital library system. Thus it is supposed that the system follows the component-oriented approach. The <use> relations capture the

**Examples:** --

## **R17 conflictWith**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Architectural Components* to *Resources* they realises.

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

## **R18 invokes**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Running Components* to *Running Components* they use to accomplish their task.

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

## **R19 belongTo**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Resources* to the *Resource Sets* in whose *extension* they belong. A specialisation of it is the relation connecting an *Actor* to a *Group* which defines which user group an actor belongs to.

**Rationale:** A *Resource* may be a member of any number of *Resource Set extensions* and, vice versa, the *extension* of a *Resource Set* may include any (finite) number of *resources*.

**Examples:**

- An *Information Object* belongs to a *Collection*
- An *Actor* belongs to a *Group*

## R20 hasEdition

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Information Objects* to the *Information Objects* that realise them along the time dimension.

**Rationale:** In “classic” Digital Library models, *Editions* represent the different states of an *Information Object* during its lifetime, i.e. they play the role usually assigned to versions.

Versioning usually makes up a tree, because an object may be the version of at most one other object. However, in the digital library world a more liberal approach may be appropriate allowing an *Information Object* to be the *edition* of possibly many different *Information Objects*. The resulting structure will be a directed graph, which must be acyclic to avoid unintuitive situations.

**Examples:** An *Information Object* representing a study:

- *<hasEdition>* another *Information Object* representing the draft version of such a study;
- *<hasEdition.* another *Information Object* representing the “submitted version” of such a study;
- *>hasEdition>* another *Information Object* representing the “version published in the conference proceedings” with colour images;

## R21 hasView

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Information Objects* to the *Information Objects* which are *Views* of them.

**Rationale:** The concept of *View* captured by this relation fits very well with those used in the database world. In this context, a view is a virtual or logical table expressed as a query providing a new organisational unit to support some application. Similarly, *Information Object Views* are introduced to provide multiple presentations of the information represented/captured by the *Information Object* that may result useful in specific application contexts.

The same *Information Object* may have different *Information Objects* linked through the *<hasView>* relation. Vice versa, an *Information Object* may or may not be a *view*, that is the second term of a *<hasView>* relationship.

**Examples:**

- An *Information Object* representing a data stream of an environmental sensor
  - *<hasView>* the *Information Object* consisting of the raw data, i.e. a series of numerical values measured by the sensor
  - *<hasView>* the *Information Object* consisting of a picture reporting the graph of the evolution of the values measured by the sensor along the time.
- An *Information Object* representing the outcomes of a workshop
  - *<hasView>* the *Information Object* representing the “full view” and containing a preface prepared by the conference chair and the whole set of papers accepted and organised thematically;

- *<hasView>* the *Information Object* representing the “handbook view” and containing the conference program and the slides of each lecturer accompanied with the abstract of the papers organised per session, and
- *<hasView>* the *Information Object* representing the “informative view” and reporting the goal of the workshop and the title list of the accepted papers together with the associated abstract.

## R22 hasManifestation

**Definition:** The relation associating *Information Objects* to the *Information Objects* representing their physical embodiment.

### Rationale:

While *Edition* and *View* concepts deal with the intellectual and logical organisation of *Information Objects*, the *Manifestation* concept captured by the *<hasManifestation>* relation deals with the physical presentation of objects.

### Examples:

- The *Information Object* representing a conference paper *<hasManifestation>* the PDF file or the Microsoft Word file embodying it.
- A lecture *Information Object* *<hasManifestation>* the MPEG file containing the video recording of the event.
- A sensor *Information Object* *<hasManifestation>* the file containing the raw data captured by the sensor.

## R23 hasIntension

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Collection* to the *Query* describing the criterion underlying the *Collection*.

**Rationale:** In logic, the intension of an expression is its sense, as distinguished by the reference (or denotation) of the expression, called the extension of the expression. This distinction was firstly made by G. Frege, for whom the sense of an expression corresponded to what we intuitively think as the meaning of the expression. R. Carnap later suggested that the sense of an expression is a function which gives, for each state of affairs, the extension of the expression. S. Kripke, upon defining a semantics for modal logic, finally established the notion of possible world as state of affairs [63]. Davidson argued that giving the meaning of a sentence is equivalent to stating its truth conditions.

The intension of a *collection* can thus be understood as a statement of what must be true of an object for it to be a member of the collection.

**Examples:** --

## R24 hasExtension

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Collections* to the *Resource Sets* representing the *Information Objects* belonging to them.

**Rationale:** In logic, the extension of an expression is its denotation. For a proposition, this is the truth value in the considered interpretation; the extension of a predicate is the set of objects that are denoted by the predicate in the considered interpretation.

**Examples:** --

## R25 profile

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Component Profiles* to the *Resources* they describe. *Component Profiles* should describe (at least) *Functions*, *Policies*, *Quality Parameters*, and *Interfaces* inherent to *Architectural Components* they are associated with via the *<hasProfile>* relation.

**Rationale:** *Component Profile* is the *Metadata* associated with each *Architectural Component* for its management. The <profile> relation captures the aspects expected to be captured by this kind of profile.

**Examples:**

- The *Functions* yielded by the *Architectural Component* is a typical information expected to be included in the *Component Profile*.
- The *Quality Parameters* guaranteed by the *Architectural Component* is a typical information expected to be included in the *Component Profile*.

## R26 perform

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Actors* to *Functions* they use to do accomplish their Digital Library activities.

**Rationale:** *Functions* has no meaning by themselves if no *Actor* is executing them. This relation is fundamental to a DL, as it expresses the interaction of the DL with the *Actors* through specific *Functions* in order to accomplish their goals.

**Examples:**

## R27 play

**Definition:** The relation connecting an *Actor* to a *Role* which defines the *Role(s)* of the *Actor*.

**Rationale:** DL *Actors* may play different *Roles* in the DL, for example be at the same time *Content Creator* and *Content Consumer*.

**Examples:** --

## R28 interactWith

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Functions* to *Functions* that expresses the interaction between them.

**Rationale:** This *Function* is fundamental for the modelling of the workflow of execution for the *Functions*. It defines an order between them in order to clarify which *Function* follows the current one.

**Examples:**

## R29 influencedBy

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Functions* to *Actor Profiles* which expresses that *functions* are influenced by specific user characteristics.

**Rationale:** This relation is very important for personalization, as it expresses that functionality is related to and influenced by the *Actor Profile* of the *Actor* executing it, adapting thus to the *Actor* specific needs.

**Examples:**

## R30 actOn

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Functions* to *Resources* they operate on.

**Rationale:** This relation expresses the connection between specific *Functions* and the *Resources* they interact with, either to manage or access them. A *Function* in most cases produces a result to be presented to the *Actor*, it represents an action performed on one of the DL constituents, which are not only primary *Information Objects*, but also *Actor* profiles, *Policies*, etc.

**Examples:**

**R31 create**

**Definition:** The relation connecting the *Create Functions* to *Resources* they create.

**Rationale:** This connection expresses the relation of the creation of *resources* to the *resource* created by the *function*. Note that in this case the new *Resource* is not actually inserted in the library, until a *Submit Function* has been performed.

**Examples:**

**R32 createAnnotation**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Annotate Functions* to *Information Objects* they create.

**Rationale:** This relation expresses the relation of the creation process of an *annotation* with its end result.

**Examples:**

**R33 createVersion**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Author Collaboratively Function* to *Information Objects* they create. These *Information Objects* are linked to the originating *Information Objects* via the *<hasEdition>* relation.

**Rationale:** This relation expresses the fact that a by-product of collaborating authoring is different versions of the authored *Information Object*.

**Examples:**

**R34 createView**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Convert to Different Format Functions* to *Information Objects* they create. These *Information Objects* are linked to the originating *Information Objects* via the *<hasView>* relation.

**Rationale:** This relation records the fact that the conversion of an *Information Object* to a different format creates another view of it. An example of this is the conversion of a Word document to pdf.

**Examples:**

**R35 createManifestation**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Extract* and *Physically Convert Functions* to *Information Objects* they create. These *Information Objects* are linked to the originating *Information Objects* via the *<hasManifestation>* relation.

**Rationale:** In this case the primary *Information Object* itself is transformed and a new *manifestation* is created.

**Examples:**

**R36 retrieve**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Access Resource Functions* to *Resources* they find. A specialisation of this relation connect *Find Collaborator Functions* to *Actors* they find. Another specialization is the relation *return* which connects the *Function Discover* and *Result Set*.

**Rationale:** This *Function* connects a retrieval function to the retrieved result.

**Examples:**

**R37 return**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Discover Functions* to *Result Sets* they find. It is a specialization of the *retrieve* relation connecting *Access Resource Functions* to *Resources*.

**Rationale:** This *Function* connects a *discover function* to the *result set* it returns.

**Examples:**

**R38 produce**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Query* to *Result Sets* they return.

**Rationale:** When a *Query* is performed as a result of a *Search Function*, it produces a *result set*.

**Examples:**

**R39 issue**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Search Functions* to the *Queries* they use to retrieve results.

**Rationale:** In order for the *Function* to retrieve the results the *Actor* has requested, it has to issue a *Query* to a *Collection* and retrieve a *result set*.

**Examples:**

**R40 govern**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Policies* to the *Resources* they control/govern.

**Rationale:** Each *Policy* to be effectively implemented must be applied to *Resources*. This relation captures those *Resources* each *Policy* is designed to influence the actions and conduct.

**Examples:** *Digital Rights Management Policy* governs *Functions*, while *Digital Rights* govern *Information Objects*.

**R41 prescribe**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Framework Specifications* to the *Interfaces* they state as a rule that should be carried out by *Architectural Components* that <conformTo> it.

**Rationale:** *Framework Specification* is the *Software Architecture Component* that describes the design of the set of *Software Architecture Components* planned to form the *Software Architecture* of a system. By establishing the *Interfaces* each *Software Architecture Component* (actually a *Software Component*) is expected to implement it is possible to guarantee by design that the set of *Software Architecture Components* forming a *Software Architecture* will properly work collaboratively as to form a whole.

**Examples:**

- A *Framework Specification* may <prescribe> the publish/subscribe *Interface* each *Software Component* of a system must implement in order to conform to the publish/subscribe mechanism planned for such a system.

**R42 antonymOf**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Policy* to *Policy* with opposite meaning.

**Rationale:** This relation is used when we have a set of two Policy (in general *Resources*) with opposite meaning. It is introduced in order to facilitate the understanding of bi-polar sets of concepts.

**Examples:** *Extrinsic policy* and *Intrinsic policy* form a pair where each concept is <antonymOf> the other concept.

### **R43 influence**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Quality Parameter* to *Policy* they affect.

**Rationale:** This reference model does not present the digital library as a static entity, but also highlights the processes within the functioning of a digital library. One important aspect is how decisions for applying specific *Policies* could be taken within the DL. This relation captures the cases in which the decision is based on *Quality Parameters*.

**Examples:** The value of *Security Enforcement Quality Parameter* supported by a Digital Library System will influence the *Digital Right Management Policy*.

### **R44 expressAssessment**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Quality Parameters* to the *Actors* who are expressing an assessment about a *Resource*.

**Rationale:** See Quality Parameter, Actor, and Resource.

**Examples:** See Quality Parameter, Actor, and Resource.

### **R45 evaluatedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Quality Parameters* to the *Measures* according to which they are evaluated.

**Rationale:** See Quality Parameter and Measure.

**Examples:** See Quality Parameter and Measure.

### **R46 measuredBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Quality Parameters* to the *Measurements* which assign them a value.

**Rationale:** See Quality Parameter and Measurement.

**Examples:** See Quality Parameter and Measurement.

### **R47 affectedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Quality Parameters* to other *Resources* which influence their determination.

**Rationale:** See Quality Parameter and Resource.

**Examples:** See Quality Parameter and Resource.

### **R48 accordTo**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Measurements* to the *Measures* which define how they have to be obtained.

**Rationale:** See Quality Parameter, Measure, and Measurement.

**Examples:** See Quality Parameter, Measure, and Measurement.

### **R49 implement**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Architectural Components* to the *Resources* they realises.

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

### **R50 realisedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Software Components* to the *Running Components* realising them.

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

### **R51 support**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Application Frameworks* to the *Running Components* they support the operation.

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

### **R52 hostedBy**

**Definition:** The relation connecting *Running Components* to the *Hosting Nodes* physically hosting them.

**Rationale:** --

**Examples:** --

## **Conclusions**

This document has presented the DELOS Reference Model for Digital Libraries. It consists of separate parts that illustrate the DELOS model from different perspectives and at different level of abstractions. This structure has been introduced to accommodate the needs of the many different players of the digital library universe that are interested in understanding the digital library systems at different level of details.

The model presented is the result of a three years effort aimed at contributing to the ambitious process of laying foundations for digital libraries as a whole. Research on “digital libraries” addresses many different areas. The lack of any agreement on the foundations for this broad research field has led to a plethora of systems, methodologies and results that are difficult to combine and reuse to produce enhanced outcomes.

The model illustrated draws upon the understanding of Digital Library systems acquired by several European research groups active in the Digital Library field for many years, both within the DELOS Network of Excellence and outside, as well as by other groups around the world. In such an aspect, it has to be intended as a collective effort made by the digital library community to agree on a common ground. This is meant to be useful not only for current activities but also as a springboard for future work.

The presented model is an abstract framework for understanding significant relationships among the entities of the digital library universe, and for the development of consistent standards or specifications supporting the different elements of this universe. It aims at providing a common semantics that can be used unambiguously across and between different application areas both to explain and organise existing digital library systems and to support the evolution of research and developments in this area.

Because of the broad coverage of the digital library field, the heterogeneity of the involved actors, and the lack of any previous agreement on the foundations of the field, the DELOS Reference Model has to be considered as a living document shared by the digital library community. For this reason, this document is made available in its subsequent versions, each taking advantage from the previous one and from the public comments received.

The framework introduced so far does not aim at covering every specific aspects of the digital library universe. Rather its objective is to provide a core context representing the main aspects of these systems. Other specific aspects can easily be modelled by relying on this core part and by introducing more detailed concepts and relationships. We expect that in the future many more focussed, fine-grained models, developed by other communities will be progressively integrated in the current model thus creating an increasingly richer framework capable of capturing more and more aspects of the digital library universe.

## Appendix A. Concept Maps in A4 format

### A.1. DL Resource Domain Concept Map

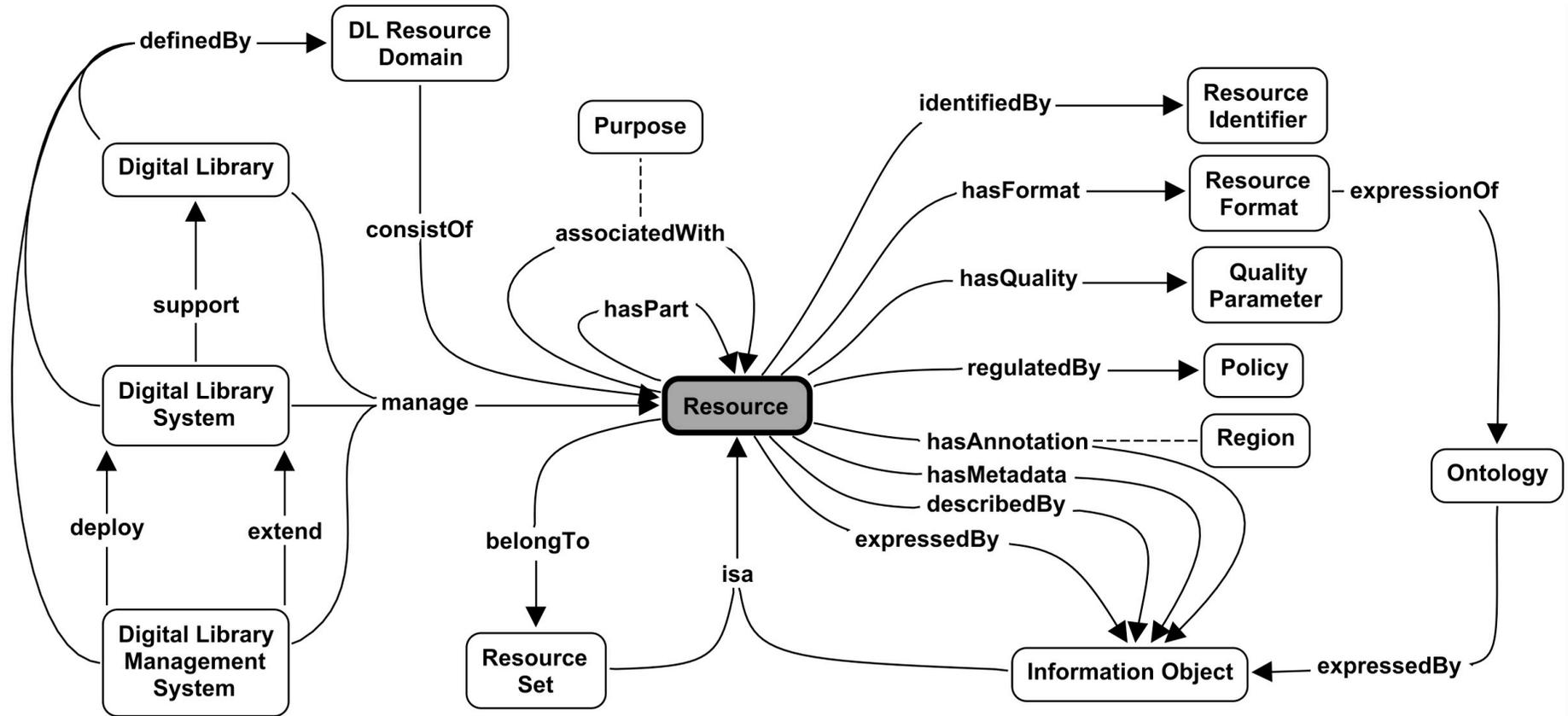


Figure A-1. Resource Domain Concept Map (A4 format)

A.2. Content Domain Concept Map

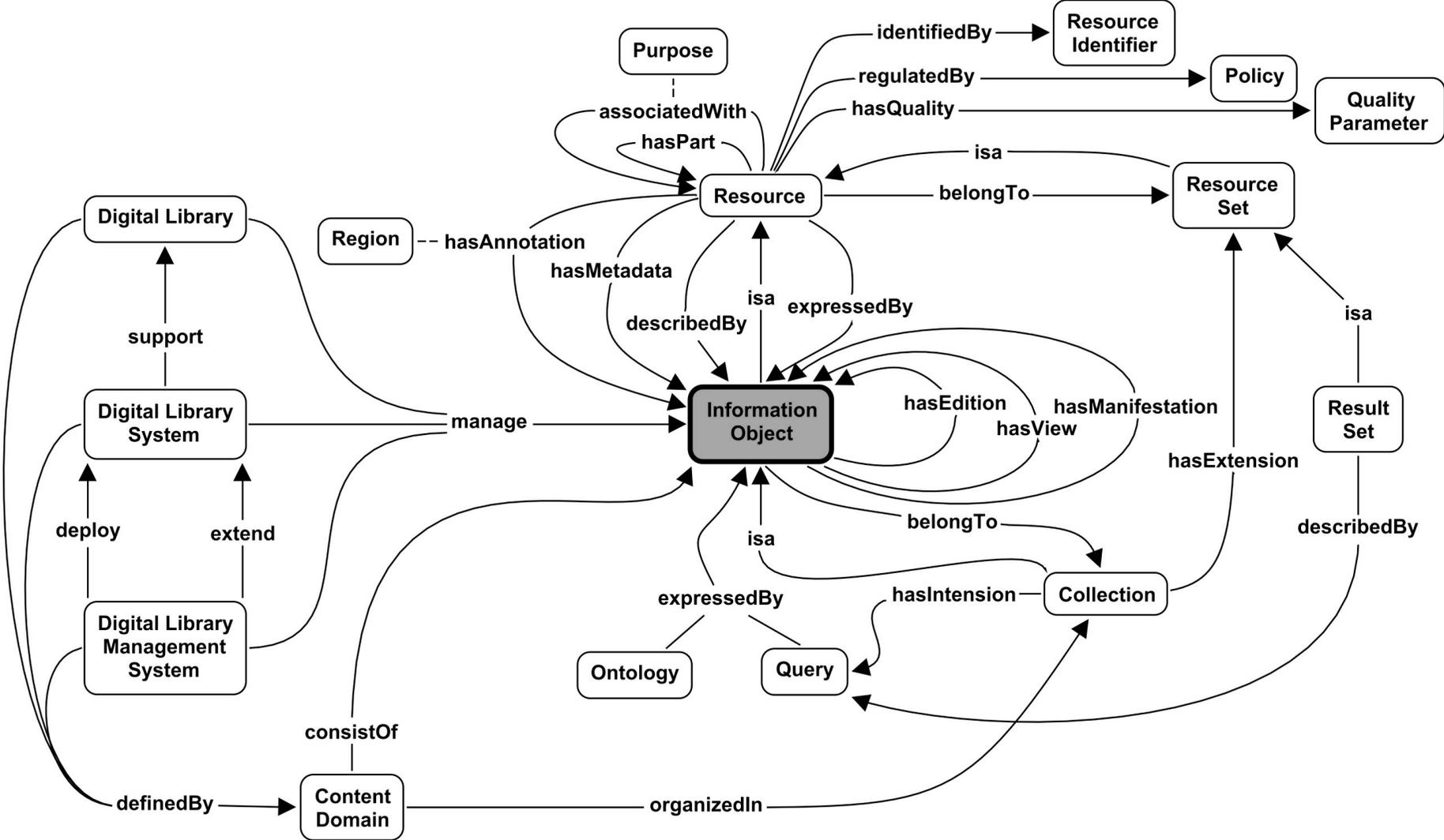


Figure A-2. Content Domain Concept Map (A4 format)

**A.3. User Domain Concept Map**

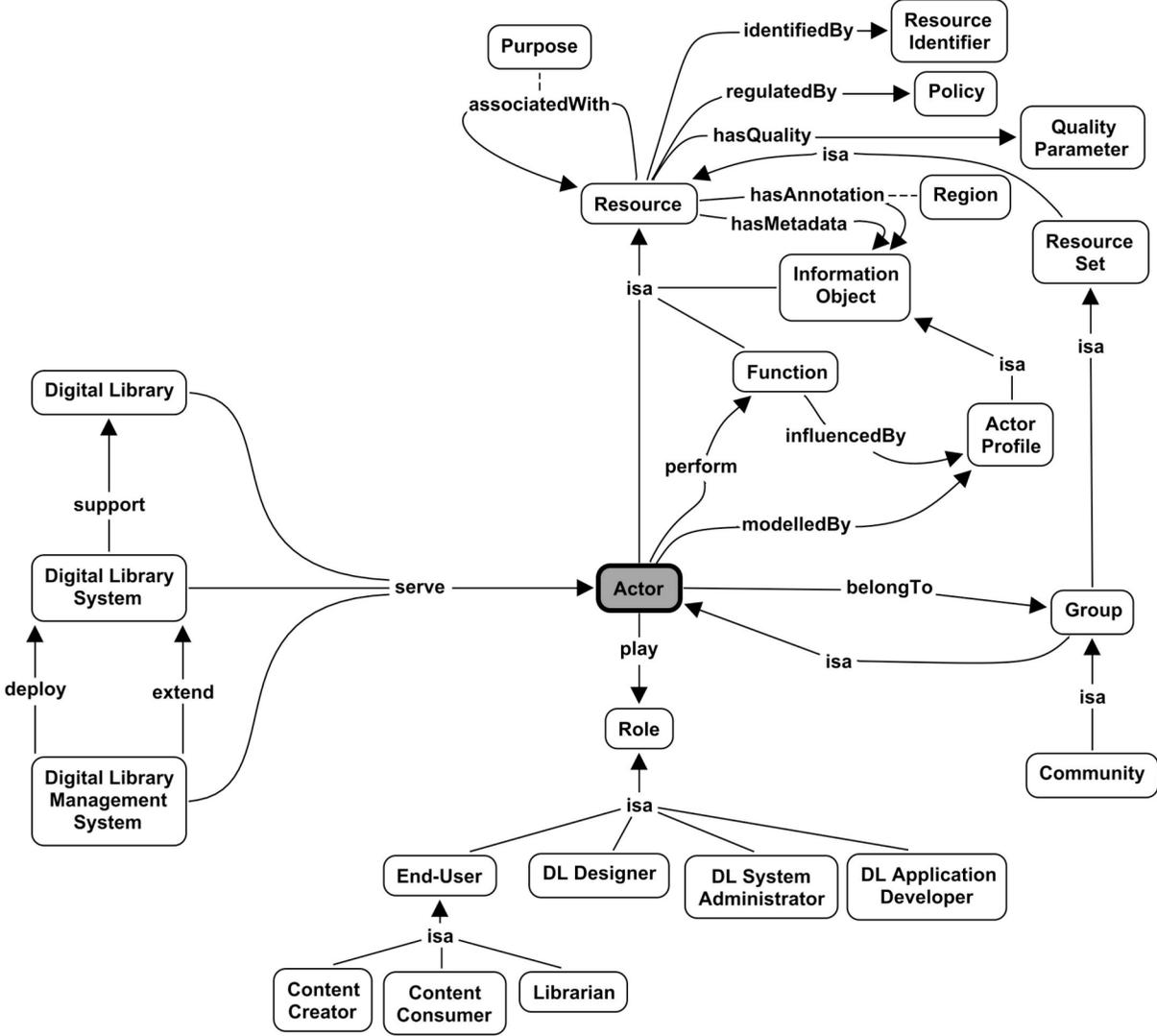


Figure A-3. User Domain Concept Map (A4 format)

A.4. Functionality Domain Concept Map

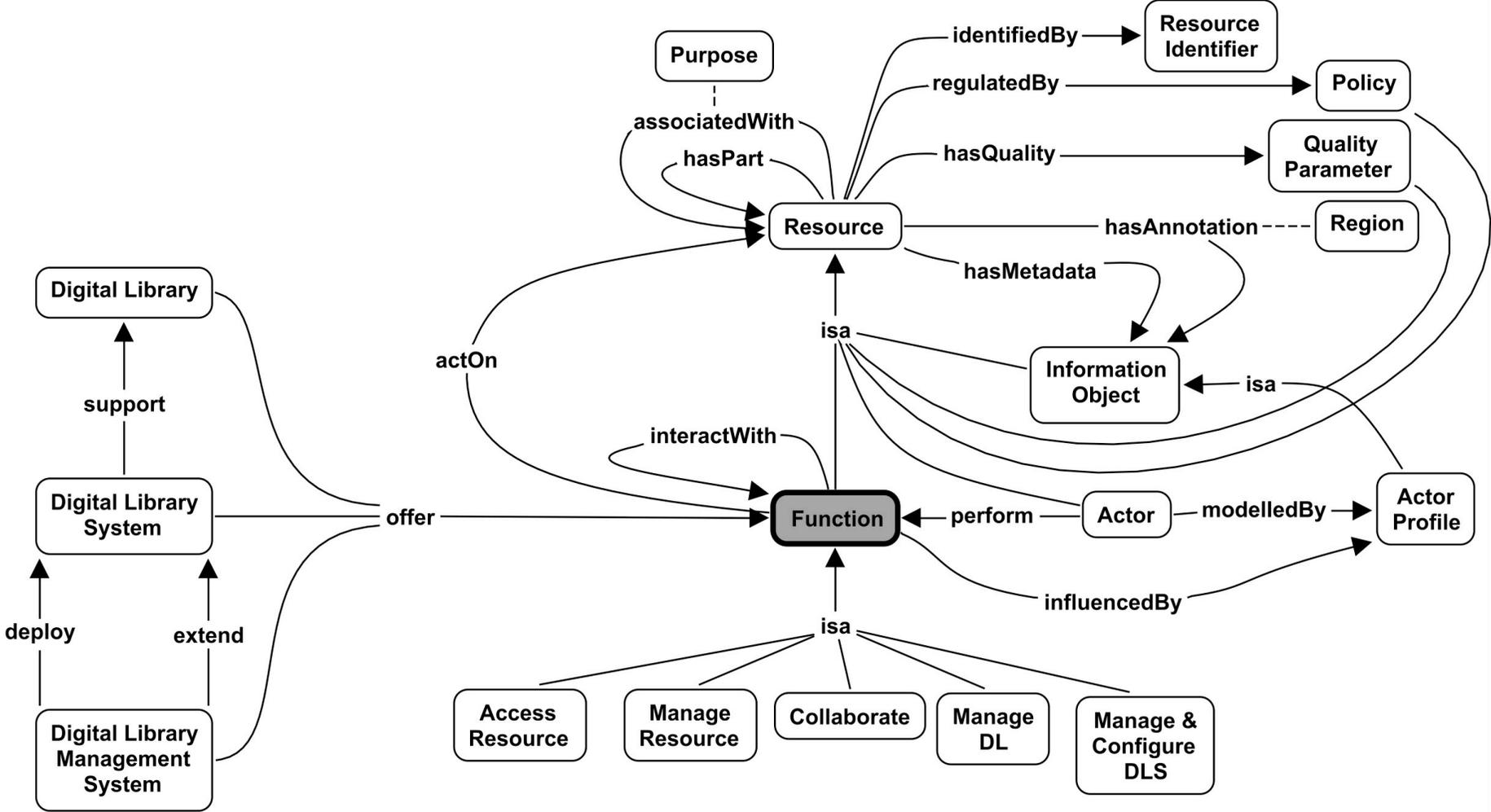


Figure A-4. Functionality Domain Concept Map (A4 format)

**A.5. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Access Resource Functions**

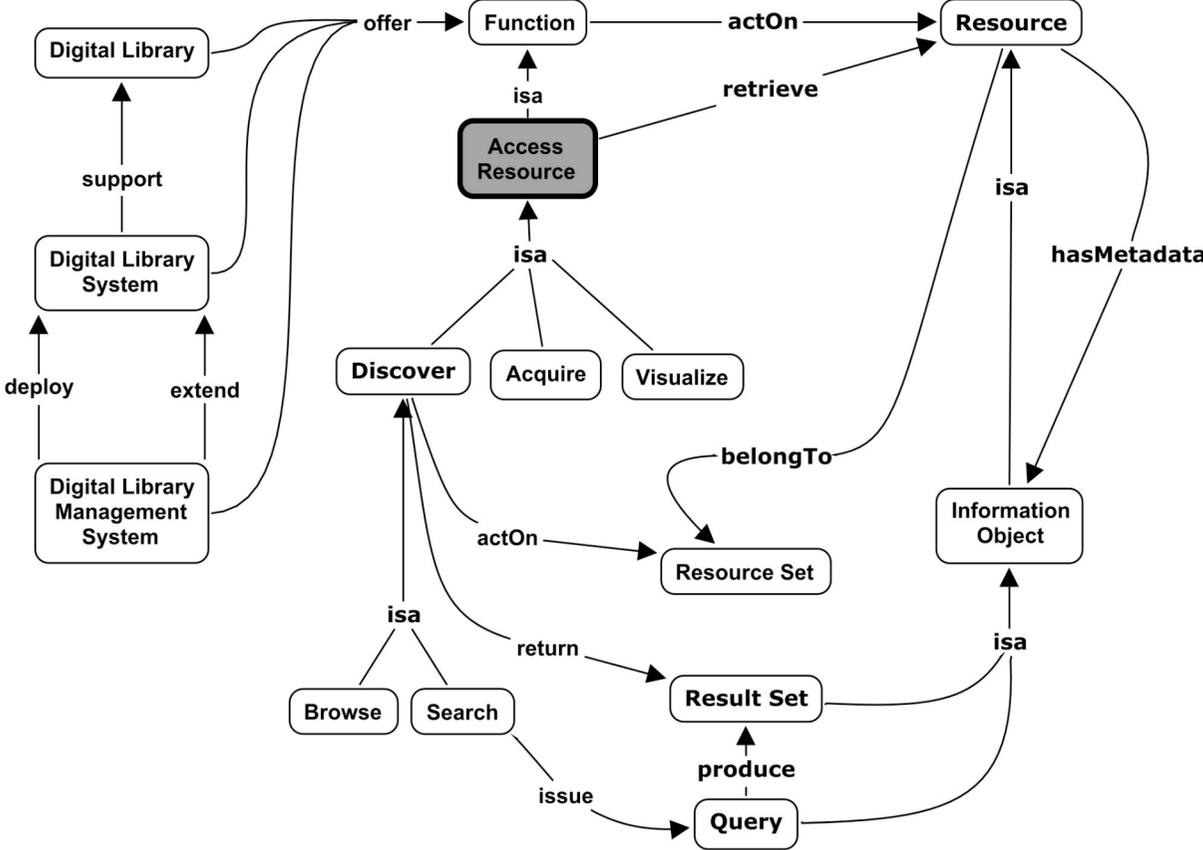


Figure A-5. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Access Resource Functions (A4 format)

A.6. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Specializations of the Manage Resource Function

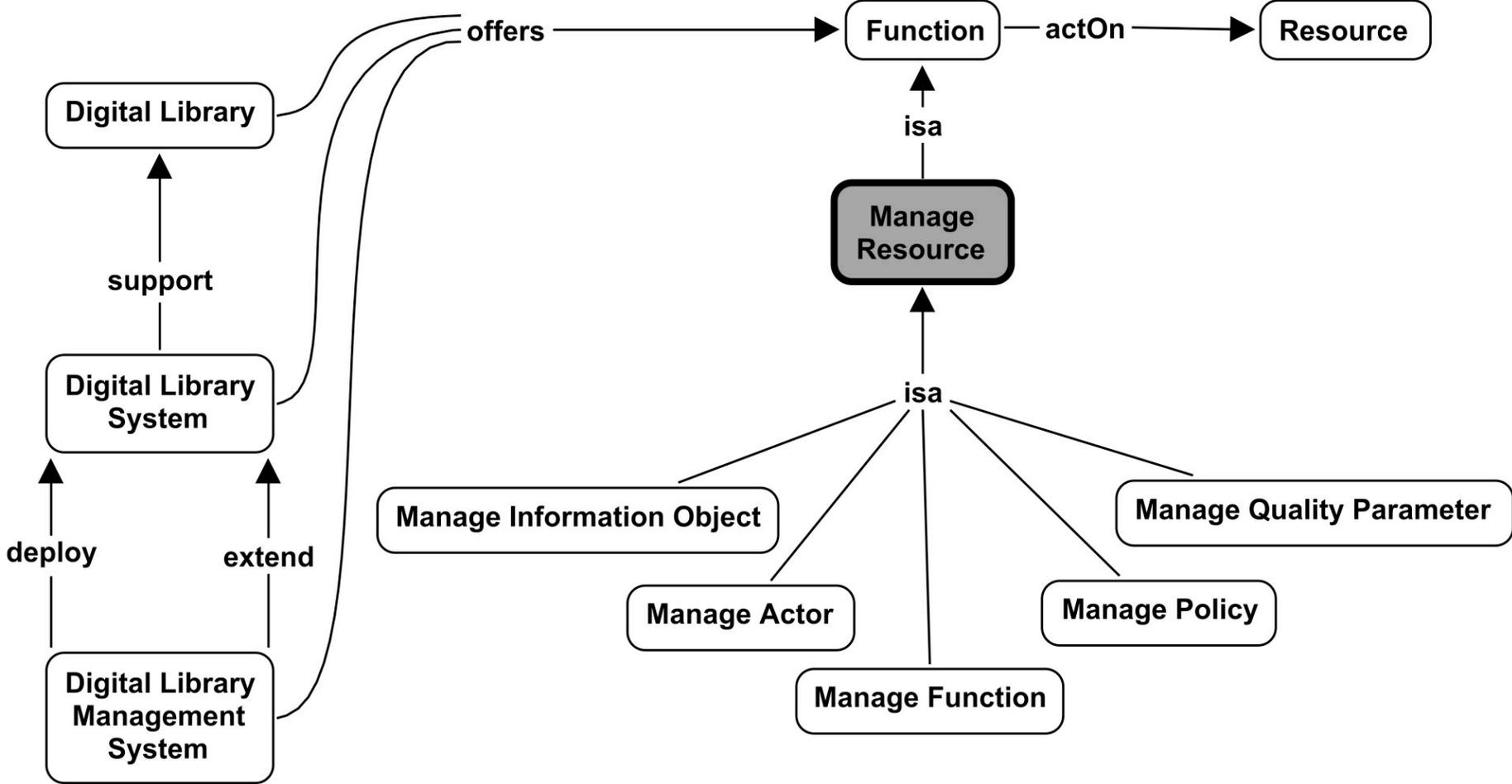


Figure A-6. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Specializations of the Manage Resource Function (A4 format)

**A.7. Functionality Domain Concept Map: General Manage Resource Functions**

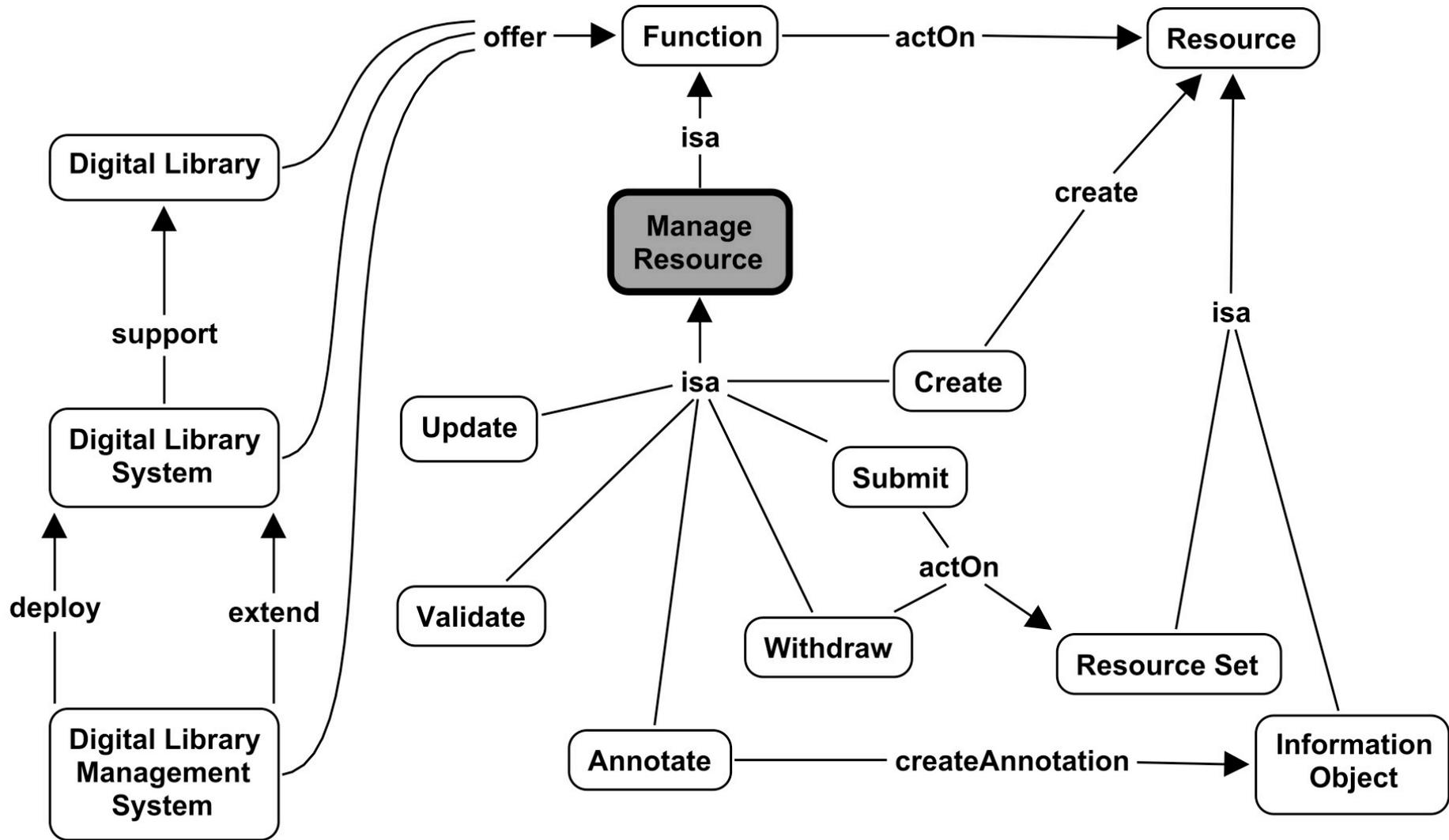


Figure A-7. Functionality Domain Concept Map: General Manage Resource Functions (A4 format)

**A.8. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Information Object Functions**

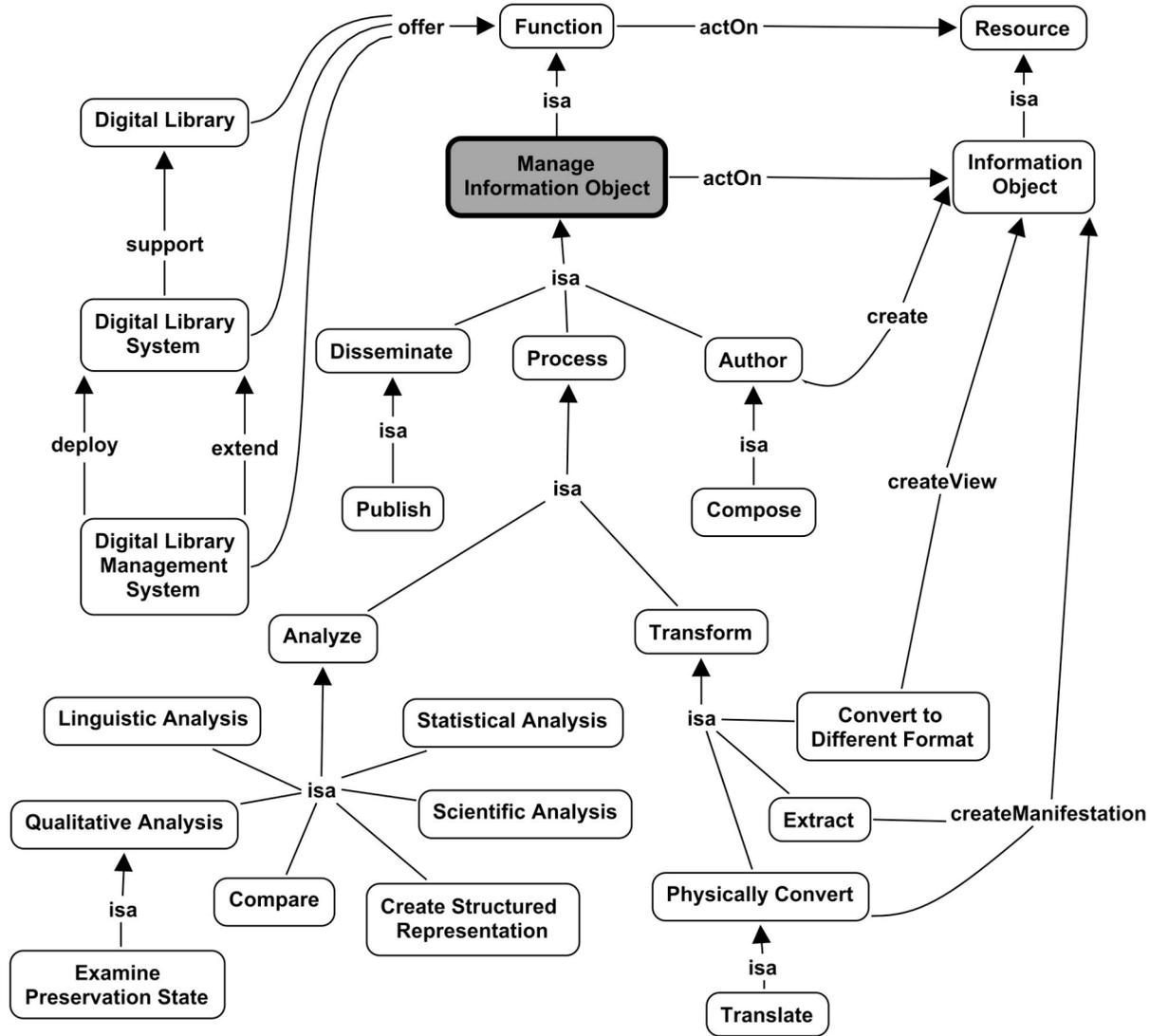


Figure A-8. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Information Object Functions (A4 format)

**A.9. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Actor Functions**

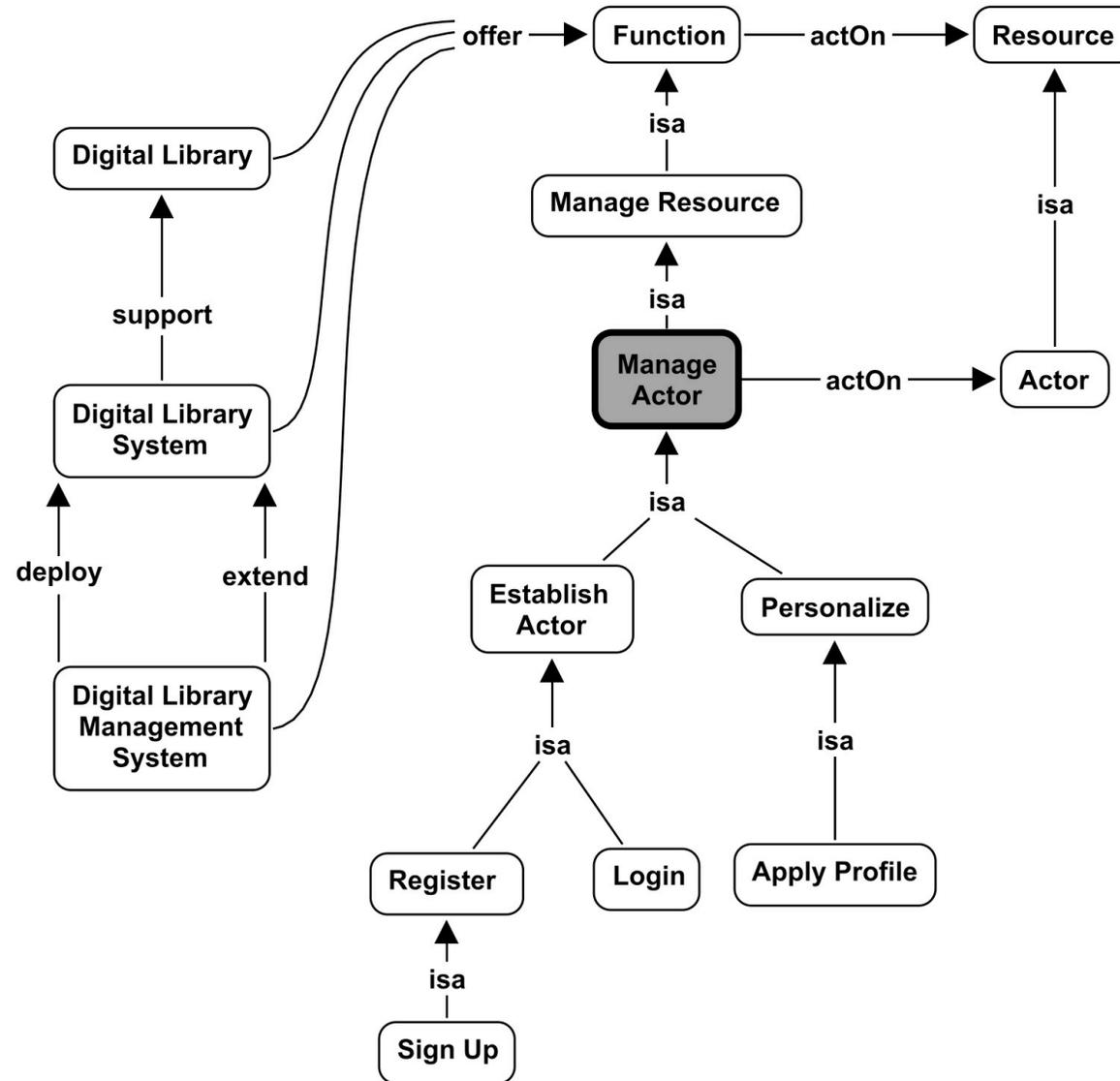


Figure A-9. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage Actor Functions (A4 format)

A.10. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Collaborate Functions

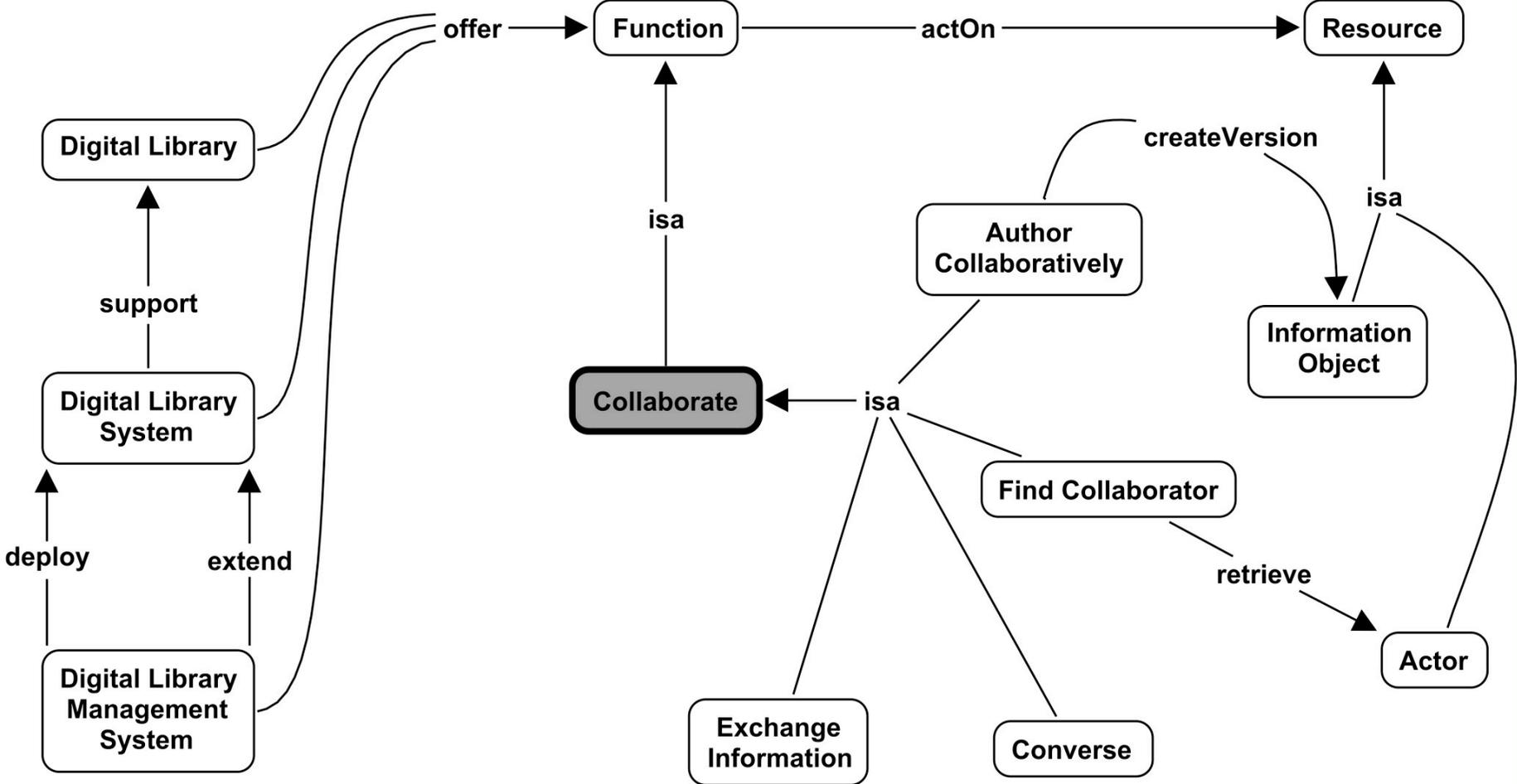


Figure A-10. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Collaborate Functions (A4 format)

A.11. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DL Functions

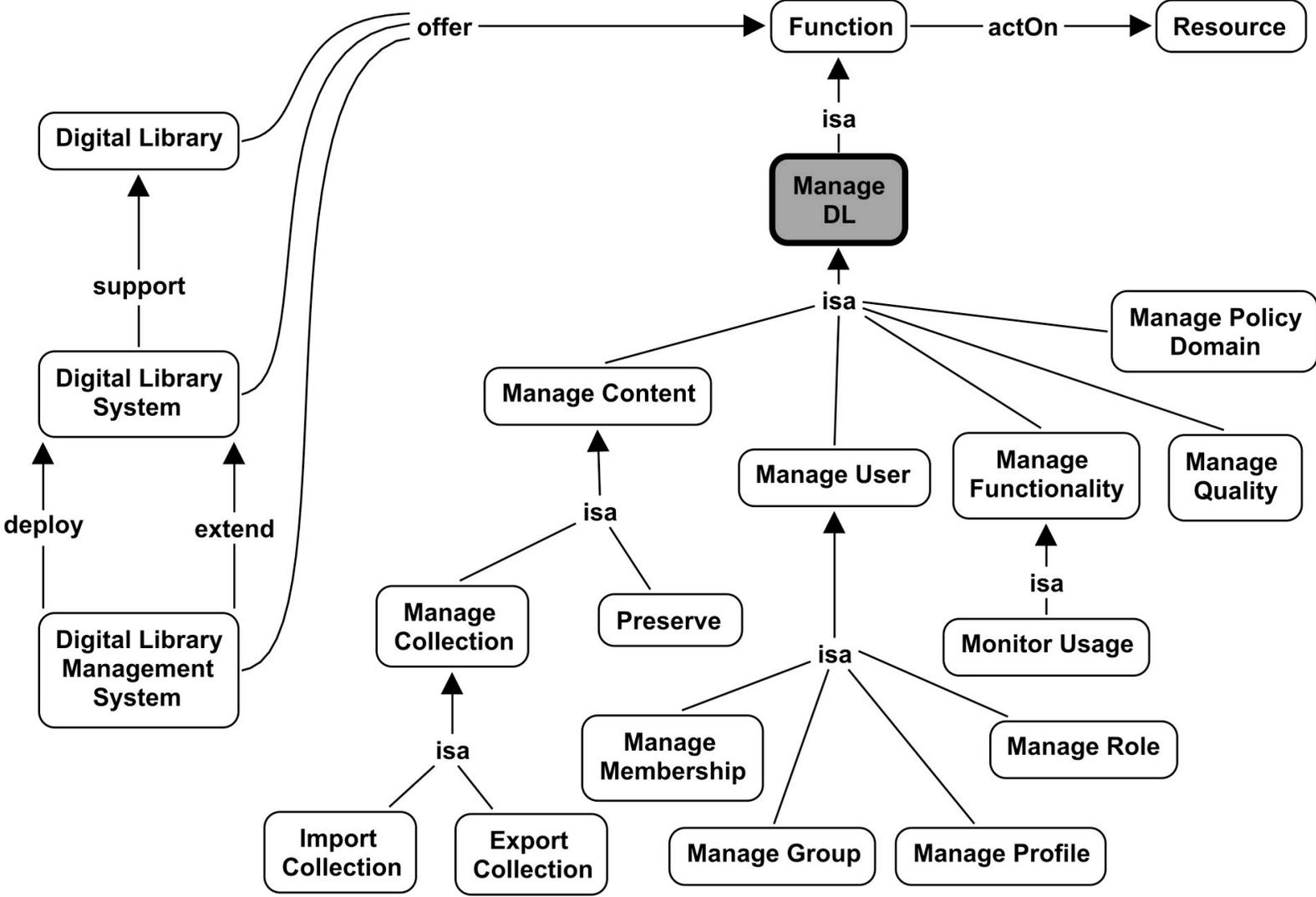


Figure A-11. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage DL Functions (A4 format)

**A.12. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage & Configure DLS Functions**

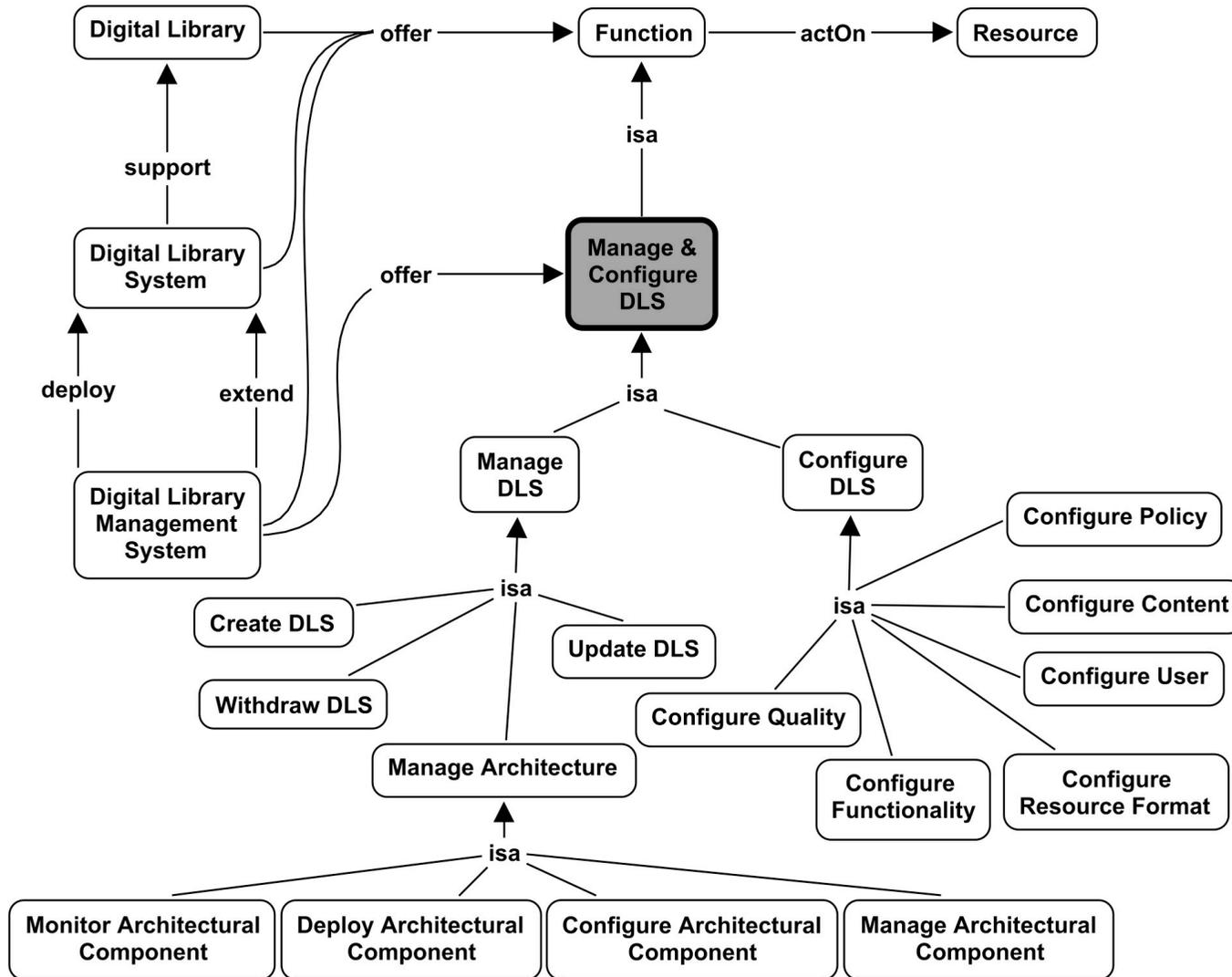


Figure A-12. Functionality Domain Concept Map: Manage & Configure DLS Functions (A4 format)

A.13. Policy Domain Concept Map

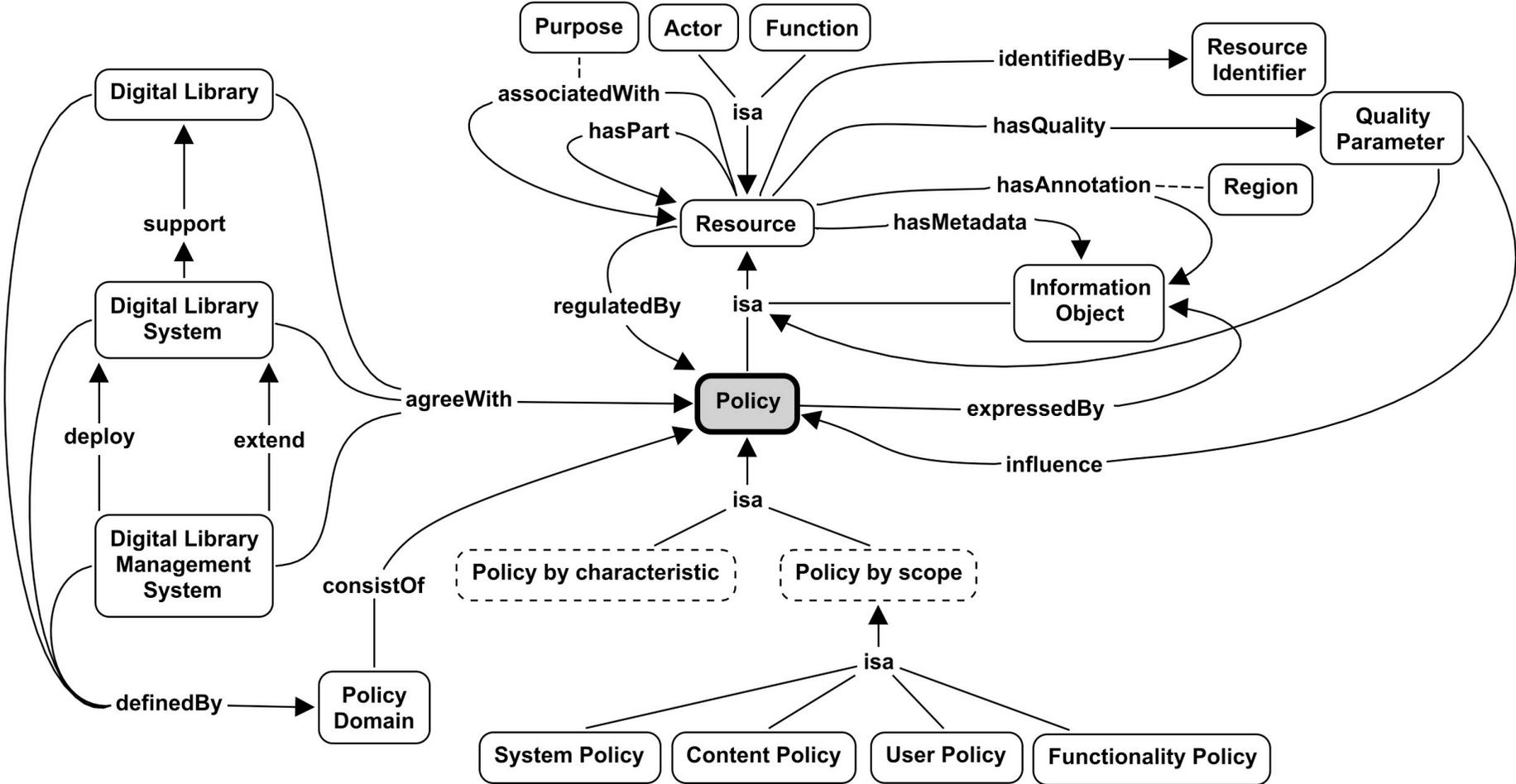


Figure A-13. Policy Domain Concept Map (A4 format)

**A.14. Policy Domain Concept Map: Policies' Hierarchy**

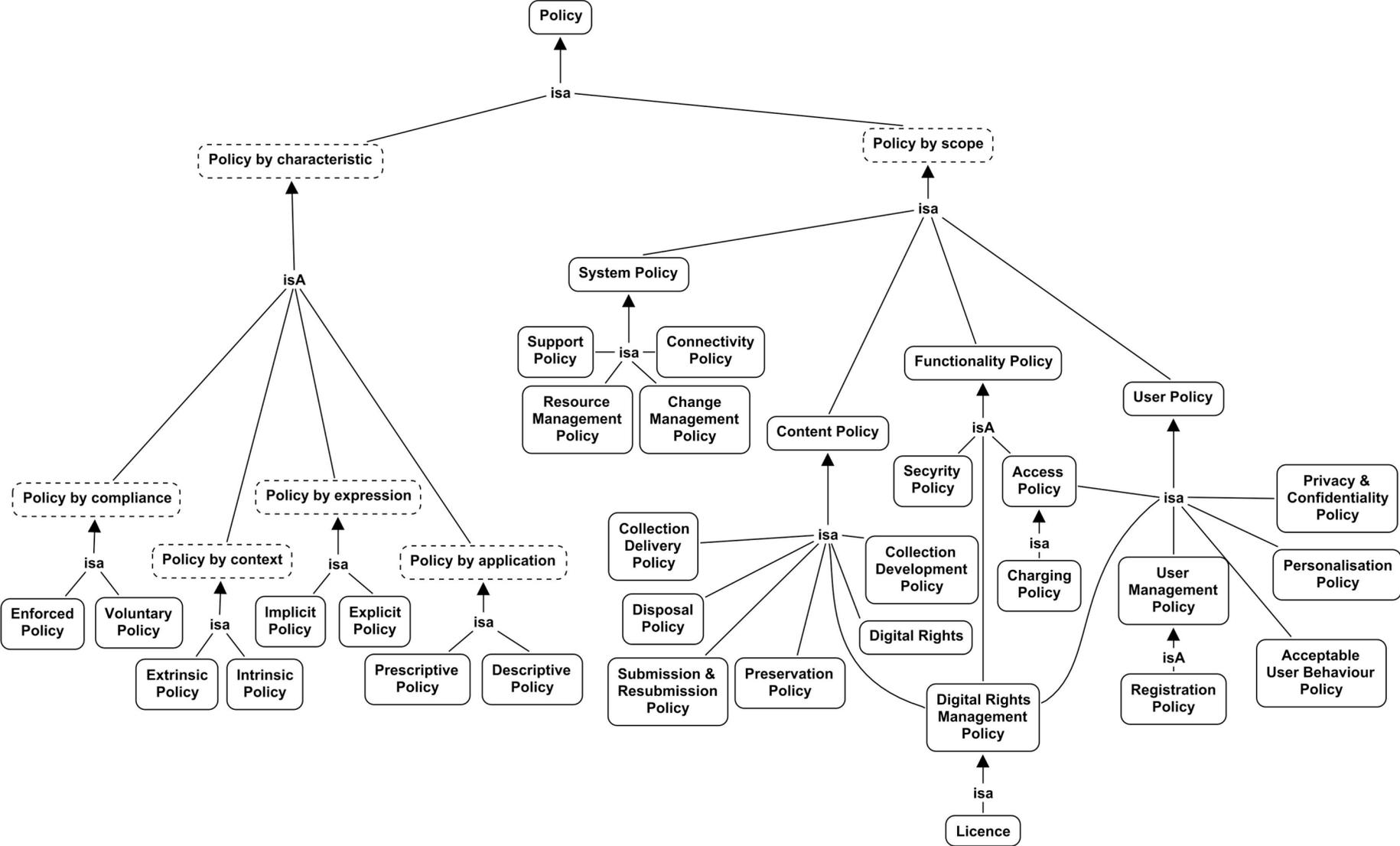


Figure A-14. Policy Domain Concept Map: Policies' Hierarchy (A4 format)

**A.15. Quality Domain Concept Map**

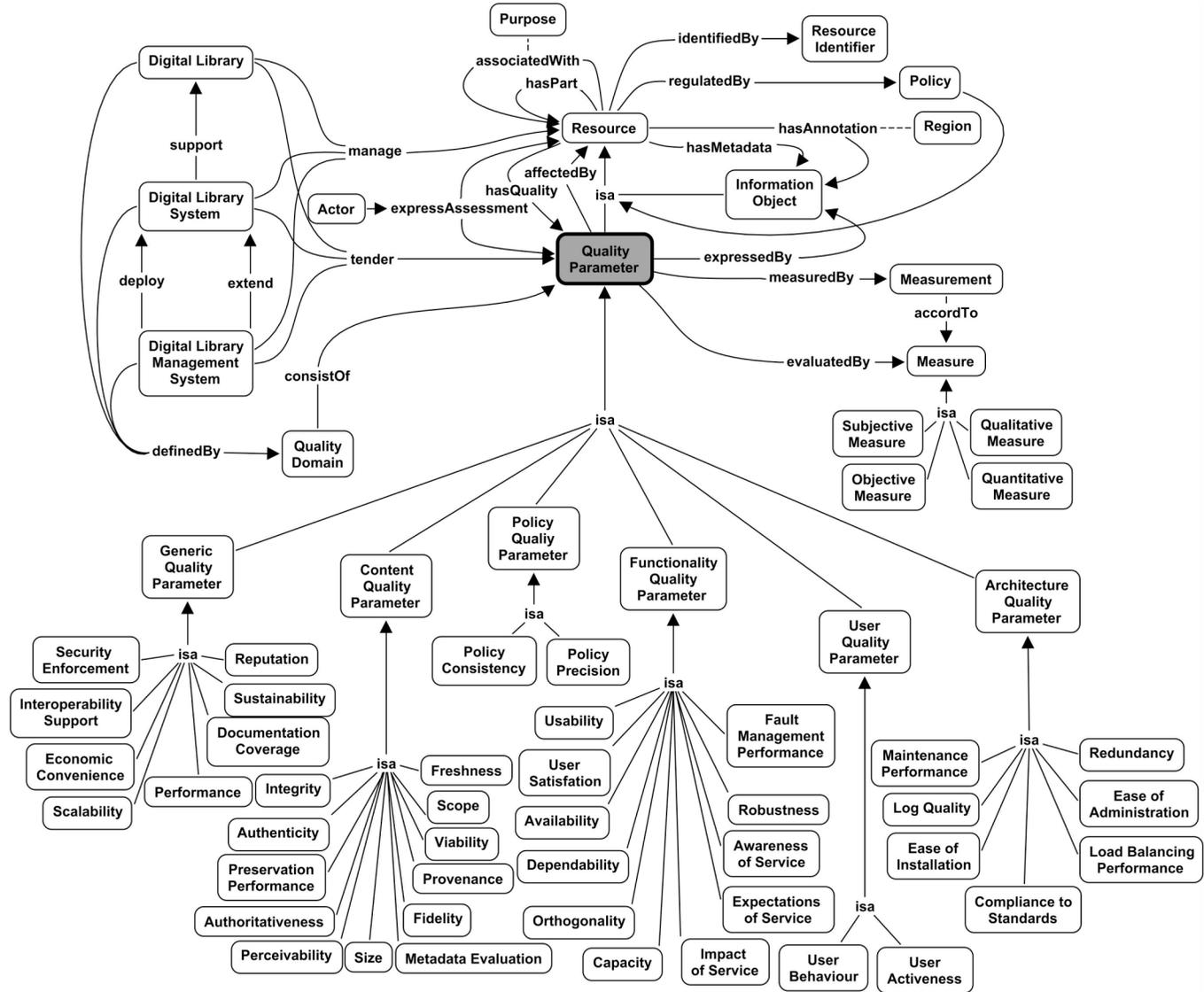


Figure A-15. Quality Domain Concept Map (A4 format)

**A.16. Architecture Domain Concept Map**

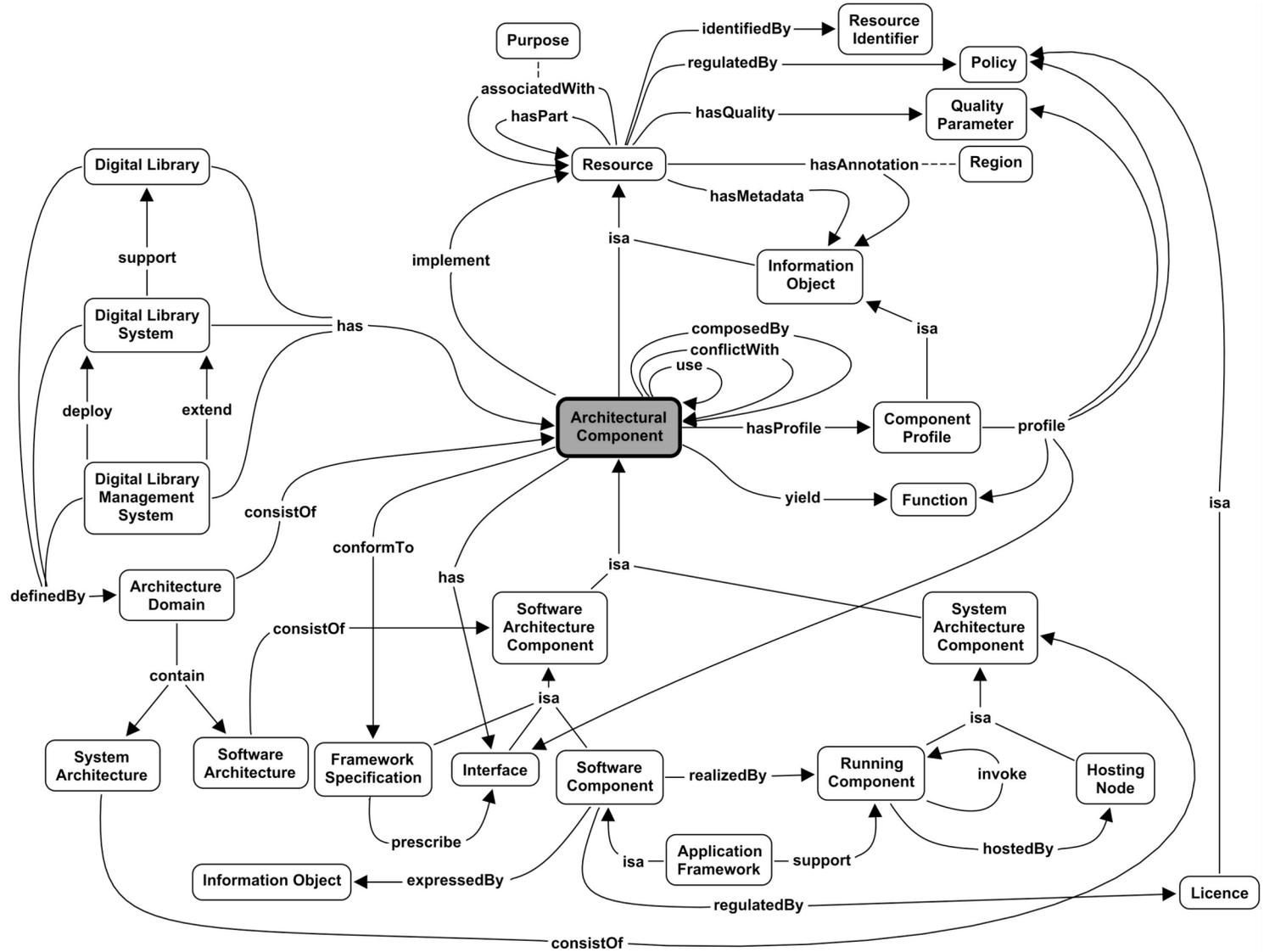


Figure A-16. Architecture Domain Concept Map (A4 format)

## Index of Concepts and Relations

### A

Acceptable User Behaviour  
  Policy .....120  
Access Policy .....121  
Access Resource .....86  
accordTo .....161  
Acquire .....88  
actOn .....158  
Actor .....81  
Actor Profile .....77  
affectedBy .....161  
Analyze .....92  
Annotate .....90  
Annotation .....78  
antonymOf .....160  
Application Framework .....143  
Apply Profile .....98  
Architectural Component .....141  
Architecture Domain .....140  
Architecture Quality Parameter  
  .....138  
associatedWith .....155  
Authenticity .....129  
Author .....91  
Author Collaboratively .....100  
Authoritativeness .....130  
Availability .....134  
Awareness of Service .....134

### B

belongTo .....155  
Browse .....87

### C

Capacity .....134  
Change Management Policy  
  .....112  
Charging Policy .....121  
Collaborate .....99  
Collection .....79  
Collection Delivery Policy .....116  
Collection Development Policy  
  .....115  
Community .....83  
Compare .....94  
Compliance to Standards .....139  
Component Profile .....78  
Compose .....92  
composedBy .....155  
Configure Architectural  
  Component .....105  
Configure Content .....107  
Configure DLS .....106  
Configure Functionality .....107  
Configure Policy .....107  
Configure Quality .....108

Configure Resource Format .....107  
Configure User .....107  
conflictWith .....155  
conformTo .....152  
Connectivity Policy .....114  
Content Consumer .....84  
Content Creator .....84  
Content Domain .....73  
Content Policy .....114  
Content Quality Parameter .....129  
Converse .....99  
Convert to a Different Format  
  .....95  
Create .....89, 159  
Create DLS .....104  
Create Structured  
  Representation .....94  
createAnnotation .....159  
createManifestation .....159  
createVersion .....159  
createView .....159

### D

Dependability .....136  
Deploy Architectural  
  Component .....106  
describedBy .....153  
Descriptive Policy .....111  
Digital Library .....147  
Digital Library (DL) .....16  
Digital Library Management  
  System .....149  
Digital Library Management  
  System (DLMS) .....16  
Digital Library System .....148  
Digital Library System (DLS)  
  .....16  
Digital Rights .....117  
Digital Rights Management  
  Policy .....116  
Discover .....87  
Disposal Policy .....115  
Disseminate .....91  
DL Application Developer .....85  
DL Designer .....85  
DL System Administrator .....85  
Documentation Coverage .....128

### E

Ease of Administration .....139  
Ease of Installation .....139  
Economic Convenience .....126  
Edition .....74  
End-User .....84  
Enforced Policy .....112  
Establish Actor .....96  
evaluatedBy .....161

Examine Preservation State .....93  
Exchange Information .....99  
Expectations of Service .....135  
Explicit Policy .....110  
Export Collection .....101  
expressAssessment .....161  
expressedBy .....154  
expressionOf .....152  
Extract .....96  
Extrinsic Policy .....110

### F

Fault Management  
  Performance .....135  
Fidelity .....132  
Find Collaborator .....99  
Framework Specification .....144  
Freshness .....130  
Function .....86  
Functionality Domain .....85  
Functionality Policy .....121  
Functionality Quality  
  Parameter .....133

### G

Generic Quality Parameter .....125  
govern .....160  
Group .....82

### H

hasAnnotation .....154  
hasEdition .....156  
hasExtension .....157  
hasFormat .....152  
hasIntension .....157  
hasManifestation .....157  
hasMetadata .....153  
hasPart .....154  
hasProfile .....154  
hasQuality .....153  
hasView .....156  
hostedBy .....162  
Hosting Node .....145

### I

identifiedBy .....152  
Impact of Service .....135  
implement .....162  
Implicit Policy .....111  
Import Collection .....101  
influence .....161  
influencedBy .....158  
Information Object .....73  
Integrity .....130  
interactWith .....158  
Interface .....144  
Interoperability Support .....126

Intrinsic Policy .....	110	perform.....	158	<b>S</b>	
invokes .....	155	Performance.....	128	Scalability .....	129
issue.....	160	Personalise .....	97	Scientific Analysis .....	94
<b>L</b>		Personalization Policy.....	119	Scope.....	131
Librarian.....	84	Physically Convert .....	95	Search.....	87
License .....	118	play .....	158	Security Enforcement.....	127
Linguistic Analysis.....	93	Policy .....	109	Security Policy .....	122
Load Balancing Performance		Policy Consistency .....	138	Sign Up .....	97
.....	139	Policy Domain .....	108	Size.....	132
Log Quality.....	139	Policy Precision .....	138	Software Architecture .....	146
Login.....	97	Policy Quality Parameter .....	138	Software Architecture	
<b>M</b>		prescribe.....	160	Component.....	141
Maintenance Performance ..	140	Prescriptive Policy .....	111	Software Component.....	143
Manage & Configure DLS..	104	Preservation Performance ..	131	Statistical Analysis .....	93
Manage Actor.....	96	Preservation Policy.....	118	Subjective Measure .....	123
Manage Actor Profile.....	103	Preserve.....	101	Submission and Resubmission	
Manage Architectural		Privacy and Confidentiality		Policy .....	116
Component.....	105	Policy .....	120	Submit .....	89
Manage Architecture.....	105	Process .....	92	support.....	162
Manage Collection .....	100	produce.....	160	Support Policy .....	113
Manage Content .....	100	profile .....	157	Sustainability .....	128
Manage DL.....	100	Provenance.....	131	System Architecture .....	146
Manage DLS.....	104	Publish.....	91	System Architecture	
Manage Function.....	98	Purpose.....	147	Component.....	144
Manage Functionality .....	103	<b>Q</b>		System Policy .....	112
Manage Group .....	102	Qualitative Analysis .....	93	<b>T</b>	
Manage Information Object..	91	Qualitative Measure .....	123	Transform .....	94
Manage Membership.....	102	Quality Domain .....	122	Translate.....	95
Manage Policy .....	98	Quality Parameter.....	124	<b>U</b>	
Manage Policy Domain .....	103	Quantitative Measure .....	124	Update .....	90
Manage Quality .....	103	Query.....	80	Update DLS .....	105
Manage Quality Parameter ..	98	<b>R</b>		Usability.....	136
Manage Resource .....	89	realisedBy .....	162	use .....	155
Manage Role.....	102	Redundancy .....	140	User Activeness.....	137
Manage User.....	102	Region .....	147	User Behaviour .....	137
Manifestation .....	75	Register .....	97	User Domain.....	81
Measure.....	122	Registration Policy .....	119	User Management Policy.....	119
measuredBy .....	161	regulatedBy.....	153	User Policy .....	118
Measurement .....	124	Reputation.....	127	User Quality Parameter.....	137
Metadata.....	76	Resource.....	71	User Satisfaction .....	136
Metadata Evaluation .....	133	Resource Format .....	72	<b>V</b>	
modelledBy.....	154	Resource Identifier .....	71	Validate .....	90
Monitor Architectural		Resource Management Policy		Viability .....	133
Component.....	106	.....	113	View .....	75
Monitor Usage.....	103	Resource Set .....	72	Visualise .....	88
<b>O</b>		Result Set .....	72	Voluntary Policy .....	112
Objective Measure .....	123	retrieve .....	159	<b>W</b>	
Ontology .....	80	return .....	160	Withdraw .....	90
Orthogonality.....	135	Robustness .....	136	Withdraw DLS .....	104
<b>P</b>		Role .....	83		
Perceivability.....	132	Running Component .....	145		

## Bibliography

- [1] Abiteboul, S.; Agrawal, R.; Bernstein, P.; Carey, M.; Ceri, S.; Croft, B.; DeWitt, D.; Franklin, M.; Garcia-Molina, H.; Gawlick, D.; Gray, J.; Haas, L.; Halevy, A.; Hellerstein, J.; Ioannidis, Y.; Kersten, M.; Pazzani, M.; Lesk, M.; Maier, D.; Naughton, J.; Schek, H.-J.; Sellis, T.; Silberschatz, A.; Stonebraker, M.; Snodgrass, R.; Ullman, J.D.; Weikum, G.; Widom, J.; Zdonik, S. *The Lowell Database Research Self-Assessment*. Communications of the ACM (CACM), 48(5):111--118, 2005.
- [2] Agosti, M.; Albrechtsen, H.; Ferro, N.; Frommholz, I.; Hansen, P.; Orio, N.; Panizzi, E.; Pejtersen, A. M.; Thiel, U. *DiLAS: a Digital Library Annotation Service*. In Proceedings of International Workshop on Annotation for Collaboration – Methods, Tools, and Practices (IWAC 2005), 91-101, 2005
- [3] Agosti, M.; Ferro, N. *A System Architecture as a Support to a Flexible Annotation Service*, volume 3664 of Lecture Notes In Computer Science, pages 147–166. Springer-Verlag, Berlin; Heidelberg. Peer-to-Peer, Grid, and Service-Orientation in Digital Library Architectures: 6th Thematic Workshop of the EU Network of Excellence DELOS. Revised Selected Papers, 2005
- [4] Agosti, M.; Ferro, N. Annotations as Context for Searching Documents. volume 3507 of Lecture Notes In Computer Science, pages 155–170. Springer-Verlag, Berlin; Heidelberg, Proceedings 5th International Conference on Conceptions of Library and Information Science – Context: nature, impact and role (Colis 5), 2005.
- [5] Agosti, M.; Ferro, N.; Frommholz, I.; Thiel, U. *Annotations in Digital Libraries and Collaboratories: Facets, Models and Usage*, volume 3232 of Lecture Notes In Computer Science, pages 244–255. Springer-Verlag, Berlin; Heidelberg. Research and Advanced Technology for Digital Libraries: 8th European Conference, ECDL 2004. Proceedings.
- [6] Agosti, M.; Ferro, N.; Orio, N. *Annotating Illuminated Manuscripts: an Effective Tool for Research and Education*. In Proceedings of the 5th ACM/IEEE 2005 Joint Conference on Digital Libraries (JCDL 2005), 121-130, 2005.
- [7] Alexandria Digital Library <http://www.alexandria.ucsb.edu/>
- [8] Alves M., Viegas Damásio C., Olmedilla D., Nejd W. A distributed tabling algorithm for rule based policy systems. In 7th IEEE International Workshop on Policies for Distributed Systems and Networks (POLICY 2006), London, Ontario, Canada, June 2006. IEEE Computer Society.
- [9] Andrews J., Law D., *Digital Libraries: Policy, Planning and Practice*, Ashgate, 2004, ISBN 0 7546 3448 5, 283 pages.
- [10] Antoniou G., Baldoni M., Bonatti P., Nejd W., Olmedilla D. Rule-based policy specification. In Ting Yu and Sushil Jajodia, editors, *Secure Data Management in Decentralized Systems*. Springer, 2007 (to appear).
- [11] ARTISTE An Integrated Art Analysis and Navigation Environment <http://www.ecs.soton.ac.uk/~km/projs/artiste/>
- [12] Avancini, H.; Candela, L.; Straccia, U. *Recommenders in a Personalized, Collaborative Digital Library Environment*. Journal of Intelligent Information System, 28(3), 253-283, 2007.
- [13] Ackerman, M. S. *Providing Social Interaction in the Digital Library*. In Proceedings of the First Annual Conference on the Theory and Practice of Digital Libraries, 1994
- [14] Arkin, A.; Askary, S.; Bloch, B.; Curbera, F.; Golland, Y.; Kartha, N.; Liu, C.K.; Mehta, V.; Thatte, S.; Yendluri, P.; Yiu, A.; Alves, A. *Web Services Business Process Execution Language Version 2.0*. OASIS, 2005

- [15] Baader, F.; Calvanese, D.; McGuinness, D.; Nardi, D.; Patel-Schneider, P. F. *The Description Logic Handbook: Theory, Implementation and Applications*. Cambridge University Press, 2002. ISBN 0521781760
- [16] Banwell, L.; Ray, K.; Coulson, G.; Urquhart, C.; Lonsdale, R.; Armstrong, C.; Thomas, R.; Spink, S.; Yeoman, A.; Fenton, R.; Rowley, J. (2004). The JISC User Behaviour Monitoring and Evaluation Framework. *Journal of Documentation* 60(3), pages 302–320.
- [17] Batini, C.; Scannapieco, M. (2006). *Data Quality*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, Germany.
- [18] Beall, J. *Metadata and Data Quality Problems in the Digital Library*. *Journal of Digital Information*, Vol. 6, Issue 3, Article No. 355, 2005-06-12.
- [19] Becker M., Sewell P. Cassandra: Distributed access control policies with tunable expressiveness. In 5th IEEE International Workshop on Policies for Distributed Systems and Networks (POLICY 2004), pp. 159-168, Yorktown Heights, NY, USA, June 2004. IEEE Computer Society.
- [20] Belkin, N.J. Understanding and Supporting Multiple Information Seeking Behaviors in a Single Interface Framework. In *Proceeding of the Eighth DELOS Workshop: User Interfaces in Digital Libraries*, pages 11–18. European Research Consortium for Informatics and Mathematics, 1999.
- [21] Belkin, N.J.; Oddy, R.N.; Brooks, H.M. ASK for Information Retrieval: part 1. Background and Theory. *Journal of Documentation* 38(2), pages 61–71, 1982
- [22] Besek, J. M. *Copyright issues relevant to the creation of a digital archive: A preliminary assessment*. Council on Library and Information Resources, Library of Congress. (January 2003) <http://www.clir.org/pubs/reports/pub112/pub112.pdf>
- [23] Bhagwat, D.; Chiticariu, L.; Tan, W.-C.; and Vijayvargiya, G. An Annotation Management System for Relational Databases. In M. A. Nascimento, M. T. Özsu, D. Kossmann, R. J. Miller, J. A. Blakeley, and K. B. Schiefer, editors, *Proc. 30th International Conference on Very Large Data Bases (VLDB 2004)*, pages 900–911. Morgan Kaufmann, 2004.
- [24] Bonatti P. A., Shahmehri N., Duma C., Olmedilla D., Nejdl W., Baldoni M., Baroglio C., Martelli A., Patti V., Coraggio P., Antoniou G., Peer J., Fuchs N. Rule-based policy specification: State of the art and future work. Technical report, Working Group I2, EU NoE REVERSE, August 2004. <http://reverse.net/deliverables/i2-d1.pdf>
- [25] Bonatti P., Olmedilla D., Peer J. *Advanced policy explanations*. In 17th European Conference on Artificial Intelligence (ECAI 2006), Riva del Garda, Italy, August 2006. IOS Press.
- [26] Bonatti P.A., De Capitani di Vimercati S., Samarati P. An algebra for composing access control policies. *ACM Trans. Inf. Syst. Secur.*, 5(1):1-35, 2002.
- [27] Bonatti P.A., Duma C., Fuchs N., Nejdl W., Olmedilla D., Peer J., Shahmehri N.. Semantic web policies - a discussion of requirements and research issues. In 3rd European Semantic Web Conference (ESWC), volume 4011 of *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, Budva, Montenegro, June 2006. Springer.
- [28] Bonatti P.A., Olmedilla D. Policy language specification. Technical report, Working Group I2, EU NoE REVERSE, February 2005. <http://reverse.net/deliverables/m12/i2-d2.pdf>.
- [29] Booch, Grady; Rumbaugh, James; Jacobson, Ivar. *The Unified Modeling Language User Guide*. Addison Wesley Longman. ISBN 0321267974. 2005
- [30] Booth, D.; Haas, H.; McCabe, F.; Newcomer, E.; Champion, M.; Ferris, C.; Orchard, D. *Web Service Architecture*. W3C Working Group Note, February 2004. <http://www.w3.org/TR/ws-arch/> (last visited February 21, 2007)

- [31] Borbinha, J.; Kunze, J.; Spinazzé, A.; Mutschke, P.; Lieder, H.-J.; Mabe, M.; Dixon, L.; Besser, H.; Dean, B.; Cathro, W. Reference models for digital libraries: actors and roles. *International Journal of Digital Libraries*, 5(4):325-330, August 2005.
- [32] Borgman C.L. *What are digital libraries? Competing visions*. *Information processing and Management*, 35(3):227-243, 1999.
- [33] Bottoni, P.; Civica, R.; Levialdi, S.; Orso, L.; Panizzi, E.; Trinchese, R. *MADCOW: a Multimedia Digital Annotation System*. In *Proceedings Working Conference on Advanced Visual Interfaces (AVI 2004)*, 55–62, 2004.
- [34] Börner K. *Extracting and Visualizing Semantic Structures in Retrieval Results for Browsing*. In *Proceedings of the fifth ACM conference on Digital libraries*, San Antonio, Texas, United States, 2000.
- [35] Börner, K.; Chen C. *Visual Interfaces to Digital Libraries*. *Lecture Notes In Computer Science*, Springer, 2003
- [36] Bradner, S. *Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirements Levels*. RFC 2119, IETF, 1997
- [37] BRICKS Integrated Project: Building Resources for Integrated Cultural Knowledge Services <http://www.brickscollaboratory.org> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [38] Bruce, T.R.; Hillman, D.I. *The Continuum of Metadata Quality*, In: Hillman D. & Westbrook E. L. (eds.) *Metadata in Practice*. Chicago: American Library Association (2004).
- [39] Buschmann F., Meunier R., Rohnert H., Sommerlad P., Stal M. *Pattern-Oriented Software Architecture*. John Wiley & Sons ISBN 0-471-95869-7, 1996
- [40] Callan, J.P.; Lu, Z.; Croft, W.B. Searching Distributed Collections with Inference Networks. In E.A. Fox, P. Ingwersen, and R. Fidel, editors, *Proceedings of the 18<sup>th</sup> Annual International ACM SIGIR Conference on Research and Development in Information Retrieval*, pages 21-28, Seattle, Washington, 1995. ACM Press.
- [41] Candela, L.; Castelli, D.; Fuhr, N.; Ioannidis, Y.; Klas, C.-P.; Pagano, P.; Ross, S.; Saidis, C.; Schek, H.-J.; Schuldt, H.; Springmann, M. *Current Digital Library Systems: User Requirements vs Provided Functionality*. DELOS Deliverable D1.4.1, March 2006.
- [42] Candela, L.; Castelli, D.; Ioannidis, Y.; Koutrika, G.; Pagano, P.; Ross, S.; Schek, H.-J.; Schuldt, H. *The Digital Library Manifesto*. DELOS, 2006 ISBN 2-912335-24-8
- [43] Candela, L.; Castelli, D.; Pagano, P.; Simi, M. *OpenDLibG: Extending OpenDLib by exploiting a gLite Grid Infrastructure*. In *Research and Advanced Technology for Digital Libraries*, 10th European Conference on Digital Libraries (ECDL 2006), September 2006.
- [44] Candela, L.; Castelli, D.; Pagano, P. *Digital Library Reference Model*. Project Report 2006-PR-02, Istituto di Scienza e Tecnologie dell'Informazione "A. Faedo", CNR, January 2006.
- [45] Candela, L.; Castelli, D.; Pagano, P.; Simi, M. *From Heterogeneous Information Spaces to Virtual Documents*. In *Digital Libraries: Implementing Strategies and Sharing Experiences*, 8th International Conference on Asian Digital Libraries (ICADL 2005), December 2005.
- [46] Candela, L.; Castelli, D.; Pagano, P. *A Service for Supporting Virtual Views of Large Heterogeneous Digital Libraries*. In *Research and Advanced Technology for Digital Libraries*, 7th European Conference on Digital Libraries (ECDL 2003), August 2003.

- [47] Caplan, P. PREMIS – Preservation Metadata Implementation Strategies Update 1: Implementing preservation repositories for digital materials: current practice and emerging trends in the cultural heritage community. *RLG DigiNews*, 8(5), October 2004. [http://www.rlg.org/en/page.php?Page\\_ID=20462#article2](http://www.rlg.org/en/page.php?Page_ID=20462#article2) (2004).
- [48] Castelli, D.; Pagano, P. *A System for Building Expandable Digital Libraries*. In Proceedings of ACM/IEEE 2003 Joint Conference on Digital Libraries (JCDL 2003), 335-345, 2003
- [49] CCSDS 650.0-B-1: Reference Model for an Open Archival Information System (OAIS). Blue Book. Issue 1. January 2002. This Recommendation has been adopted as ISO 14721:2003 [http://ssdoo.gsfc.nasa.gov/nost/isoas/ref\\_model.html](http://ssdoo.gsfc.nasa.gov/nost/isoas/ref_model.html) (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [50] Chen, C.; Paul R.J. *Visualizing a Knowledge Domain's Intellectual Structure*. IEEE Computer, 34(3):65-71, 2001.
- [51] Chen, Peter P. *The Entity-Relationship Model - Toward a Unified View of Data*. ACM Transactions on Database Systems 1 (1): 9-3. 1976
- [52] Chinnici, R.; Gudgin, M.; Moreau, J-J.; Schlimmer, J.; Weerawarana, S. *Web Services Description Language (WSDL) Version 2.0 Part 1: Core Language*. W3C Working Draft <http://www.w3.org/TR/wsd120> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [53] Clark, J. A. A Usability Study of the Belgian American Research Collection: Measuring the Functionality of a Digital Library. *OCLC Systems and Services: International Digital Library Perspectives* 20(3), pages 115–127, 2004
- [54] Clement L., Hatley A., von Riegen C., Rogers T. *UDDI Version 3.0.2*. UDDI Spec Technical Committee Draft, OASIS. [http://uddi.org/pubs/uddi\\_v3.htm](http://uddi.org/pubs/uddi_v3.htm) (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [55] Cohen, J. E. The Law and Technology of Digital Rights Management: DRM and Privacy. *Berkeley Technology Law Journal* 18 (Spring 2003) : 575-617.
- [56] COLLATE Collaboratory for Annotation, Indexing and Retrieval of Digitized Historical Archive Material <http://www.collate.de>
- [57] Constantopoulos, P.; Doerr, M.; Theodoridou, M.; and Tzobanakis, M. *On Information Organization in Annotation Systems*, volume 3359 of Lecture Notes In Computer Science, pages 189–200. Springer-Verlag, Berlin; Heidelberg. International Workshop on Intuitive Human Interfaces for Organizing and Accessing Intellectual Assets, 2004
- [58] D'Agostino, G. Copyright Treatment of Freelance Work in the Digital Era. *Santa Clara Computer and High Technology Law Journal* 19 (December 2002), pp.: 37-110.
- [59] Del Bimbo, A.; Gradmann, S.; Ioannidis, Y. (Eds.) *Future Research Directions*. 3<sup>rd</sup> DELOS Brainstorming Workshop Report, Corvara, Italy, July, 2004
- [60] DELOS Network of Excellence on Digital Libraries <http://www.delos.info> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [61] Deutsch L. P. *Design Reuse and Frameworks in the Smalltalk-80 System*. In Software Reusability, 57-71, ACM Press 1989.
- [62] DILIGENT Integrated Project: Digital Library Infrastructure on Grid Enabled Technology <http://www.diligentproject.org> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [63] Dowty, D.R., Wall, R., Peters, S. Introduction to Montague Semantics Series: Studies in Linguistics and Philosophy, Vol. 11 Springer Verlag, 1980
- [64] Duane N. *Service Oriented Architecture*. Adobe System Inc. White Paper, 2005.
- [65] Dublin Core Metadata Element Set, Version 1.1: Reference Description. <http://dublincore.org/documents/dces/> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [66] Duranti, L. *The long-term preservation of accurate and authentic digital data: the INTERPARES project*. *Data Science Journal*, 4: 106-118, 2005.

- [67] Duranti, L. *The Long-Term Preservation of Authentic Electronic Records*. In Proceedings of 27th International Conference on Very Large Data Bases (VLDB 2001), pages 625-628, 2001.
- [68] Ellis, D.; Haugan, M. Modeling the Information Seeking Patterns of Engineers and Research Scientists in an Industrial Environment. *Journal of Documentation* 53(4), pages 384–403, 1997.
- [69] Endrei M., Ang J., Arsanjani A., Chua S., Comte P., Pal K., Min L., Newling T. *Patterns: Service-Oriented Architecture and Web Services*. IBM Redbook. April 2004
- [70] ERPANET. 2005. *European Investment Bank Case Study Report 2004* <http://www.erpanet.org/studies/index.php>. (2004).
- [71] *Experts' Workgroup on the Preservation of Digital Memory. Firenze Agenda 2005*. Available from <http://www.erpanet.org/events/workgroup/documents/firenze%20agenda.pdf> (2005).
- [72] Faensen D., Faultstich L., Schweppe H., Hinze A., Steidinger A. *Hermes: a notification service for digital libraries*. In proceedings of the 1st ACM/IEEE-CS joint conference on Digital libraries (JCDL '01), 2001.
- [73] Farrell S. and Housley R. An Internet Attribute Certificate Profile for Authorization. RFC 3281. <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc3281.html> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [74] Ferraiolo, D.; Kuhn D.R.; Chandramouli, R. *Role-based Access Control*. Artech House, 2003.
- [75] Ferrara, R., Gentili, D. and Ponzani, V. (2006) How “free” we are: survey of the Italian policy in the document supply service. In *Proceedings EAHIL X European Conference*, Cluj (Romania), 11-16 September 2006. [http://www.eahilconfcluj.ro/docs/4b/FERRARA\\_L.doc](http://www.eahilconfcluj.ro/docs/4b/FERRARA_L.doc)
- [76] Foster, A.; Ford, N. *Serendipity and Information Seeking: an Empirical Study*. *Journal of Documentation* 59(3), pages 321–340, 2003
- [77] Fox, E.A.; Akscyn, R.M.; Furuta, R.; Leggett, J.J. *Digital Libraries*. *Communications of the ACM*, 38(4):23– 28, April 1995.
- [78] Fox, E.A.; Marchionini, G. *Toward a Worldwide Digital Library*. *Communications of the ACM*, 41(4):29–32, April 1998.
- [79] Frommholz, I.; Brocks, H.; Thiel, U.; Neuhold, E.; Iannone, L.; Semeraro, G.; Berardi, M.; Ceci, M. *Document-Centered Collaboration for Scholars in the Humanities – The COLLATE System*, volume 2769 of *Lecture Notes In Computer Science*, pages 434–445. Springer-Verlag, Berlin; Heidelberg. *Research and Advanced Technology for Digital Libraries: 7th European Conference, ECDL 2003. Proceedings*.
- [80] Fuhr, N.; Hansen, P.; Mabe, M.; Micsik, A.; Solvberg, I. (2001). *Digital Libraries: A Generic Classification and Evaluation Scheme*. In *ECDL'01: Proceedings of the 5<sup>th</sup> European Conference on Research and Advanced Technology for Digital Libraries*, pages 187-199, London, UK.
- [81] Fuhr, N.; Tsakonas, G.; Aalberg, T.; Agosti, M.; Hansen, P.; Kapidakis, S.; Klas, C.-P.; Kovács, L.; Landoni, M.; Micsik, A.; Papatheodorou, C.; Peters, C.; Solvberg, I. (2006). *Evaluation of Digital Libraries*. *International Journal of Digital Libraries*. (Online First). 2007
- [82] Gachet A. *Software Frameworks for Developing Decision Support Systems - A New Component in the Classification of DSS Development Tools*. *Journal of Decision Systems*, 12(3/4):271-281, 2003.
- [83] Garlan D. and Shaw M. *An Introduction to Software Architecture*. SEI Technical Report CMU/SEI-94-TR-21

- [84] Gavrioloaie R., Nejd W., Olmedilla D., Seamons K., Winslett M. No registration needed: How to use declarative policies and negotiation to access sensitive resources on the semantic web. In 1st European Semantic Web Symposium (ESWS 2004), volume 3053 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pp. 342-356, Heraklion, Crete, Greece, May 2004. Springer.
- [85] Ghezzi, C.; Jazayeri, M.; Mandrioli, D. *Fundamentals of Software Engineering* (2<sup>nd</sup> Ed.). Upper Saddle River, N.J., USA, Prentice Hall, 2003.
- [86] Ginsburg, J. C. Copyright and Control Over New Technologies of Dissemination. *Columbia Law Review* 101 (November 2001) : 1613-1647.
- [87] Gladney, H.M. *Principles for Digital Preservation*. Communication of the ACM 49(2):111-116, February 2006.
- [88] Gonçalves M.A. *Streams, Structures, Spaces, Scenarios, and Societies (5S): A Formal Model for Digital Library Framework and Its Applications*. PhD thesis, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, November 2004.
- [89] Gonçalves, M.A.; Fox, E.A. 5SL – A Language for Declarative Specification and Generation of Digital Libraries. In *Proceedings of the 2<sup>nd</sup> ACM/IEEE-CS Joint Conference on Digital Libraries (JCDL '02)*, Portland, Oregon, USA, 2002.
- [90] Gonçalves, M.A.; Fox, E.A.; Watson, L.T.; Kipp, N.A. *Streams, Structures, Spaces, Scenarios, Societies (5S): A Formal Model for Digital Libraries*. ACM Transactions of Information Systems (TOIS), 22(2):270-312, 2004.
- [91] Griffin, S.; Peters, C.; Thanos, C. Towards the new-generation digital libraries: recommendations of the NSF/EU-DELOS working groups Guest editor introduction. *International Journal of Digital Libraries*, 5(4):253-254, August 2005.
- [92] Groth, D. P. and Streefkerk, K. Provenance and Annotation for Visual Exploration Systems. *IEEE Transactions On Visualization And Computer Graphics*, 12(6):1500–1510, November/December 2006.
- [93] Guarino N., “Formal Ontology and Information Systems”, 1st International Conference on Formal Ontology in Information Systems (FOIS'98), 3-15, Trento, June 1998.
- [94] Gudgin, M.; Hadley, M.; Mendelsohn, N.; Moreau, J-J.; Nielsen, H. *SOAP Version 1.2 Part 0: Primer*. W3C Recommendation. <http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-part0/> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [95] Gudgin, M.; Hadley, M.; Mendelsohn, N.; Moreau, J-J.; Nielsen, H. *SOAP Version 1.2 Part 1: Messaging Framework*. W3C Recommendation. <http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-part1/> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [96] Guenther, R. PREMIS - Preservation Metadata Implementation Strategies Update 2: Core Elements for Metadata to Support Digital Preservation. *RLG DigiNews*, 8(6), December 15 2004. Retrieved December 22, 2004, from [http://www.rlg.org/en/page.php?Page\\_ID=20492#article2](http://www.rlg.org/en/page.php?Page_ID=20492#article2) (2004).
- [97] Guercio, M., Lograno L., and Battistelli A.. *Legislation, Rules and Policies for the Preservation of Digital Resources, A SURVEY, 45 pp.* [http://www.erpanet.org/events/workgroup/documents/Regulations\\_Policy%20Dossier\\_English%20version.pdf](http://www.erpanet.org/events/workgroup/documents/Regulations_Policy%20Dossier_English%20version.pdf). (2003).
- [98] Guy, M., Powell, A. and Day, M., Improving the quality of metadata in Eprint archives, *Ariadne*, 2004, Issue 38, <http://www.ariadne.ac.uk/issue38/guy/>.
- [99] Hallam-Baker P. M. and Behlendorf B. Extended Log File Format –W3CWorking Draft WD-logfile-960323. <http://www.w3.org/TR/WD-logfile.html>, March 1996.
- [100] Hartson, R.H.; Shivakumar, P.; Perez-Quinones, M.A. (2004). Usability Inspection of Digital libraries: a Case Study. *International Journal on Digital Libraries* 4(2), pages 108–123.
- [101] Harvey, R., *Preserving Digital Materials*. Munich: K.G. Saur, 246 pp. (2005).

- [102] Heery, R.; Patel, M. *Application profiles: mixing and matching metadata schemas*. Ariadne Issue 25, September 2000.
- [103] Hodge, G., Frangakis E. Digital Preservation and Permanent Access to Scientific Information; The State of the Practice: A report sponsored by The International Council for Scientific and Technical Information and CENDI. [http://www.cendi.gov/publications/04-3dig\\_preserv.pdf](http://www.cendi.gov/publications/04-3dig_preserv.pdf). (2004).
- [104] Huang, Z.; Chung, W.; Ong, T.-H.; Chen H. *A graph-based recommender system for digital library*. In proceedings of the 2nd ACM/IEEE-CS joint conference on Digital libraries (JCDL '02), 2002.
- [105] *IEEE Recommended Practice for Architectural Description*, IEEE Std P1471, 2000
- [106] IEEE Std 830-1998 IEEE recommended practice for software requirements specifications. 20 Oct 1998
- [107] IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records: Final Report*. September 1997. <http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/frbr.htm> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [108] Ingersoll, P.; Culshaw, J. *Managing Information Technology*. Libraries Unlimited, 2004.
- [109] *InterPARES Strategy Task Force Report: An Intellectual Framework for Policies, Strategies, and Standards*. In: The Long-Term Preservation of Authentic Electronic Records: Findings of the InterPARES Project. <http://www.interpares.org/book/index.htm> (2005).
- [110] Ioannidis Y. (ed.) *Digital Libraries: Future Directions for a European Research Programme*. DELOS Brainstorming Report, San Cassiano, Italy, June 2001.
- [111] Ioannidis Y. Digital libraries at a crossroads. *International Journal of Digital Libraries*, 5(4):255-265, August 2005.
- [112] Ioannidis, Y.; Maier, D.; Abiteboul, S.; Buneman, P.; Davidson, S.; Fox, E.; Halevy, A.; Knoblock, C.; Rabitti, F.; Schek, H.; Weikum, G. Digital library information-technology infrastructures. *International Journal of Digital Libraries*, 5(4):266-274, August 2005.
- [113] ISO 21127:2006 Information and documentation – A reference ontology for the interchange of cultural heritage information. December 2006
- [114] Jacobs, Ian; Walsh, N. (Eds.) *Architecture of the World Wide Web, Volume One*. W3C Recommendation. <http://www.w3.org/TR/webarch/>
- [115] Johnson, R.E.; Foote B. *Designing reusable classes*. *Journal of object-oriented programming*, 1(2):22-35, 1988.
- [116] Jones S. *Graphical Query Specification and Dynamic Result Previews for a Digital Library*. In Proceedings of 11<sup>th</sup> Annual ACM Symposium on User Interface Software and Technology. San Francisco, California, United States. 1998.
- [117] Jones, S.; Cunningham, S.J.; McNab, R.; Boddie, S. A Transaction Log Analysis of a Digital Library. *International Journal on Digital Libraries* 3(2), pages 152–169.
- [118] Kagal L., Finin T., Joshi A. A policy based approach to security for the semantic web. In 2nd International Semantic Web Conference (ISWC), vol. 2870 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pp. 402-418, Sanibel Island, FL, USA, October 2003. Springer.
- [119] Kagal L., Finin T., Joshi A. A policy language for a pervasive computing environment. In 4th IEEE International Workshop on Policies for Distributed Systems and Networks (POLICY), pages 63-, Lake Como, Italy, June 2003. IEEE Computer Society.
- [120] Kagal L., Paolucci M., Srinivasan N., Denker G., Finin T.W., Sycara K.P. Authorization and privacy for semantic web services. *IEEE Intelligent Systems*, 19(4):50-56, 2004.

- [121] Kahan, J.; Koivunen, M.-R. *Annotea: an open RDF infrastructure for shared Web annotations*. Proceedings of the 10th International Conference on World Wide Web (WWW 2001), 623–632, 2001.
- [122] Kahle, B. Jackson, M., Prelinger, R. Public access to digital materials. *D-Lib Magazine*, 7 (10), 2001.
- [123] Kaushik S., Ammann P., Wijesekera D., Winsborough W., Ritchey R.. A policy driven approach to email services. In 5th IEEE International Workshop on Policies for Distributed Systems and Networks (POLICY), p. 169-, Yorktown Heights, NY, USA, June 2004. IEEE Computer Society.
- [124] Kaushik, S., Winsborough, W., Wijesekera, D., and Ammann, P. Email feedback: a policy-based approach to overcoming false positives. In Proceedings of the 2005 ACM Workshop on Formal Methods in Security Engineering (Fairfax, VA, USA, November 11, 2005). FMSE '05. ACM, New York, NY, pp. 73-82. (2005).
- [125] Ke, H.-R.; Kwakkelaar, R.; Tai, Y.-M.; Chen, L.-C. (2002). Exploring Behavior of E-journal Users in Science and Technology: Transaction Log Analysis of Elsevier's ScienceDirect OnSite in Taiwan. *Library and Information Science Research* 24, pages 265–291.
- [126] Kelly, B.; Guy, M.; James, H. *Developing A Quality Culture For Digital Library Programmes*. Proceedings of the EUNIS 2003 Conference. Amsterdam, Holland, 2003.
- [127] Kengeri, R.; Fox, E.A.; Reddy, H.P.; Harley, H.D.; Seals, C.D. (1999). Usability Study of Digital Libraries: ACM, IEEE-CS, NCSTRL, NDLTD. *International Journal on Digital Libraries* 2(2), pages 157–169.
- [128] Kerry, A. *Digital Preservation: The Research and Development Agenda in Australia*. 21 pp. [http://www.swinburne.edu.au/lib/digcontforum/DigitalContinuity\\_AKerry.pdf](http://www.swinburne.edu.au/lib/digcontforum/DigitalContinuity_AKerry.pdf) (2001).
- [129] Kolari P., Ding L., Ganjugunte S., Joshi A., Finin T., Kagal L.. Enhancing web privacy protection through declarative policies. In 6th IEEE International Workshop on Policies for Distributed Systems and Networks (POLICY), pp. 57-66, Stockholm, Sweden, June 2005. IEEE Computer Society.
- [130] Kuhlthau, C. C. (1991). Inside the Search Process: Information Seeking from the User's Perspective. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science* 42(5), pages 361–371.
- [131] Kuny, T.; Cleveland, G. The Digital Library: Myths and Challenges. In 62nd IFLA General Conference, August 1996.
- [132] Kyrillidou, M.; Giersch, S. *Developing the DigiQUAL Protocol for Digital Library Evaluation*. Proceedings of the 5th ACM/IEEE-CS joint conference on Digital libraries. Denver, CO, USA, pages 172-173, 2005.
- [133] Lagoze, C.; Payette, S.; Shin, E.; Wilper, C. *Fedora: an architecture for complex objects and their relationships*. *International Journal of Digital Libraries*, 6, 2006.
- [134] Lagoze, C. and Van de Sompel, H. 2001. The open archives initiative: building a low-barrier interoperability framework. In Proceedings of the 1st ACM/IEEE-CS Joint Conference on Digital Libraries (Roanoke, Virginia, United States). JCDL '01. ACM, New York, NY, 54-62. DOI= <http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/379437.379449>
- [135] Lagoze, C.; Van de Sompel, H.; Nelson, M.; Warner, S. *The Open Archives Initiative Protocol for Metadata Harvesting* <http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/openarchivesprotocol.html> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [136] Lannom, L. *Handle System Overview*. In Proceedings of the 66<sup>th</sup> IFLA Council and General Conference, Jerusalem, Israel, August 2000.

- [137] Lavoie, B. *The Incentives to Preserve Digital Materials: roles, scenarios and economic decision-making*. <http://www.oclc.org/research/projects/digipres/incentives-dp.pdf>. (2003).
- [138] Lavoie, B., and Dempsey L. Thirteen ways of looking at digital preservation. *DLib Magazine* 10 (7/8). <http://www.dlib.org/dlib/july04/lavoie/07lavoie.html>. (2004).
- [139] Lavoie, B.; Henry, G.; Dempsey, L. *A Service Framework for Libraries*. *D-Lib Magazine*, 11(7/8), July/August 2006.
- [140] Lesk, M. Expanding Digital Library Research: Media, Genre, Place and Subjects. In *Proceedings on the International Symposium on Digital Library 1999: ISDL '99*, pages 51-57, Tsukuba, Ibaraki, Japan, September 1999.
- [141] Library of Congress. *MARC Standards*. <http://www.loc.gov/marc/> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [142] Library of Congress. *METS Metadata Encoding & Transmission Standard*. <http://www.loc.gov/standards/mets/> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [143] Lomow, G.; Newcomer, E. *Understanding SOA with Web Services*. Addison Wesley Professional, 2005.
- [144] Lord, P., and Macdonald A. *e-Science Curation Report. Data curation for e-science in the UK: an audit to establish requirements for future curation and provision*. The JISC Committee for the Support of Research (JCSR). [http://www.jisc.ac.uk/uploaded\\_documents/e-ScienceReportFinal.pdf](http://www.jisc.ac.uk/uploaded_documents/e-ScienceReportFinal.pdf). (2003).
- [145] Lord, P., Macdonald A., Lyon L., and David Giaretta. *From Data Deluge to Data Curation*. [www.dcc.ac.uk/docs/AHM-150-rev-ll-dg.doc](http://www.dcc.ac.uk/docs/AHM-150-rev-ll-dg.doc). (2005).
- [146] Lynch C. *Canonicalization: A Fundamental Tool to Facilitate Preservation and Management of Digital Information*. *D-Lib Magazine* 5(9), September 1999.
- [147] MacKenzie, M.; Laskey, K.; McCabe, F.; Brown, P.; Metz, R. Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture. OASIS Committee Draft 1.0, February 2006.
- [148] Marsh J. *XML Base*. W3C Recommendation. <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlbase/> (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [149] Maximilien, E.M.; Singh, M.P. A Framework and Ontology for Dynamic Web Services Selection. *IEEE Internet Computing* 8(5):84-93, September-October 2004
- [150] McClure, C. R. and Bertot, J.C. 2001. *Evaluating Networked Information Services: Techniques, Policy, and Issues*. Medford, N.J.:Information Today.
- [151] McMillan, G. *The NDLTD, and Issues of Long Term Preservation and Archiving. IT'S ABOUT TIME!* Paper read at Next Steps: Electronic Theses and Dissertations Worldwide ETD 2003, at Humboldt University, Berlin, Germany. <http://edoc.hu-berlin.de/etd2003/mcmillan-gail/PDF/index.pdf> (2003).
- [152] Melnik, S., Garcia-Molina, H., Paepcke, A. A mediation infrastructure for digital library services. *Proceedings of the fifth ACM conference on Digital libraries*, p.123-132, June 02-07, 2000, San Antonio, Texas, United States
- [153] Menell, P. S. Envisioning Copyright Law's Digital Future. *New York Law School Law Review* 46 (2002/2003), pp. 63-199.
- [154] Metrics for Metadata website, <http://ariadne.cti.espol.edu.ec/M4M/>
- [155] Mullen, S.; Crawford, M.; Lorch, M.; Skow, D. *Site Requirements for Grid Authentication, Authorization and Accounting*. GGF Document Series, Document Number GFD-I.032, October 2004.
- [156] Navarro, G.; Baeza-Yates, R. *Proximal Nodes: A Model to Query Document Databases by Content and Structure*. *ACM Transactions on Information Systems (TOIS)*, 15(4):400-435, October 1997.

- [157] Nejdil W., Olmedilla D., Winslett M., Zhang C. Ontology-based policy specification and management. In 2nd European Semantic Web Conference (ESWC), volume 3532 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pp. 290-302, Heraklion, Crete, Greece, May 2005. Springer.
- [158] Novak, J.D.; Gowin, D.B. *Learning How to Learn*. Cambridge University Press, 1984.
- [159] Novak, J.D.; Cañas, A.J. *The Theory Underlying Concept Maps and How to Construct Them*, Technical Report IHMC CmapTools 2006-01, Florida Institute for Human and Machine Cognition, 2006.
- [160] NSF/DELOS Working Group. *Invest to Save. Report and Recommendations of the NSF/DELOS Working Group on Digital Archiving and Preservation*. <http://eprints.erpanet.org/archive/00000048/01/Digitalarchiving.pdf> (2003).
- [161] Nuseibeh, B.; and Easterbrook, S. Requirements Engineering: A Roadmap. In A. Finkelstein (Ed.), *The Future of Software Engineering*, 22<sup>nd</sup> International Conference on Software Engineering ICSE 2000, Limerick, Ireland, June 2000
- [162] Oberle, D.; Lamparter, S.; Grimm, S.; Vrandečić, D.; Staab, S.; Gangemi, A. *Towards Ontologies for Formalizing Modularization and Communication in Large Software Systems*. Journal of Applied Ontology, 2006.
- [163] OCLC/RLG PREMIS Working Group *Implementing Preservation Repositories for Digital Materials: Current Practice and Emerging Trends in the Cultural Heritage Community*. Report by the joint OCLC/RLG Working Group Preservation Metadata: Implementation Strategies (PREMIS). Dublin, O.: OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc. <http://www.oclc.org/research/projects/pmwg/surveyreport.pdf> (2004).
- [164] Paepcke, A., Chang, C. K., Winograd, T., and García-Molina, H. 1998. Interoperability for digital libraries worldwide. Communications of the ACM 41, 4 (Apr. 1998), 33-42. DOI= <http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/273035.273044>
- [165] Payette, S.D.; Rieger, O.Y. *Supporting Scholarly Inquiry: Incorporating Users in the Design of the Digital Library*. The Journal of Academic Librarianship 24(2), pages 121–129, 1998.
- [166] PREMIS Working Group. Data Dictionary for Preservation metadata: Final Report of the PREMIS Working Group. May 2005.
- [167] Rieger O. *Preservation in the Age of Large-Scale Digitization*. Washington, DC: Council on Library and Information Resources. <http://www.clir.org/activities/details/lstdi.pdf> (2007).
- [168] Ross, S. *Digital Preservation, Archival Science and Methodological Foundations for Digital Libraries*. In Proc. ECDL 2007, Budapest. [http://eprints.erpanet.org/131/01/Keynote\\_ECDL2007\\_SROSS.pdf](http://eprints.erpanet.org/131/01/Keynote_ECDL2007_SROSS.pdf) (2007).
- [169] Ross, S.; Hedstrom, M. *Preservation research and sustainable digital libraries*. International Journal of Digital Libraries, 5(4):317-324, August 2005.
- [170] Rousseau, G.K.; Rogers, W.; Mead, S.E.; Sit, R A.; RousseauJamieson, B.A. *Assessing the Usability of On-line Library Systems*. Behaviour and Information Technology 17(5), pages 274–281, 1998.
- [171] Salton, G.; McGill, M.J. *Introduction to Modern Information Retrieval*. McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, 1983.
- [172] Saracevic, T. *Evaluation of Digital Libraries: an Overview*. In: Agosti, M.; Fuhr, N. (eds.): Notes of the DELOS WP7 Workshop on the Evaluation of Digital Libraries. Padua, Italy, 2004 [http://dlib.ionio.gr/wp7/workshop2004\\_program.html](http://dlib.ionio.gr/wp7/workshop2004_program.html) (last visited February 21, 2007)

- [173] Sfakakis, M.; Kapidakis, S. *User Behavior Tendencies on Data Collections in a Digital Library*, volume 2458 of Lecture Notes In Computer Science, pages 550–559. Springer-Verlag, Berlin: Heidelberg. Research and Advanced Technology for Digital Libraries: 6th European Conference, ECDL 2002, Rome, Italy, September 16-18, 2002. Proceedings.
- [174] Sharp, H., Finkelstein, A. & Galal, G. (1999). Stakeholder Identification in the Requirements Engineering Process. *Workshop on Requirements Engineering Processes (REP'99) - DEXA'99*, Florence, Italy, 1-3 September 1999, pp. 387-391
- [175] Schek, H.-J.; Schuldt, H. DelosDLMS – Infrastructure for the Next Generation of Digital Library Management Systems. *ERCIM News*, No. 66, July 2006.
- [176] Shen, R. *Applying the 5S Framework To Integrating Digital Libraries*. Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, PhD Thesis in Computer Science and Applications, Blacksburg, Virginia, USA, 2006.
- [177] Shneiderman, B.; Feldman, D. *Visualizing Digital Library Search Results with Categorical and Hierarchical Axes*. Fifth ACM International Conference on Digital Libraries. San Antonio, Texas, United States, 2000.
- [178] Shoshani, A. *Storage Resource Managers: Middleware Components for Grid Storage*. In Proceedings of the Nineteenth IEEE Symposium on Mass Storage Systems (MSS '02), 2002.
- [179] Shoshani, A.; Sim, A.; Gu, J. *Storage Resource Managers*. In Grid Resource Management: State of the Art and Future Trends, Chapter 20, 2003.
- [180] Sobel, L. S. DRM as an Enabler of Business Models: ISPs as Digital Retailers. *Berkeley Technology Law Journal* 18 (Spring 2003) : 667-695.
- [181] Soergel, D. *A Framework for Digital Library Research*. DLib Magazine, 8(12), December 2002.
- [182] Soergel, D.; Christensen-Dalsgaard, B.; Ioannidis, Y.; Schuldt, H. (Eds.) Recommendations and Observations for a European Digital Library (EDL). 4<sup>th</sup> DELOS Brainstorming Workshop Report, Juan-le-Pins, France, 5-6 December 2005. ISBN 2-912335-19-1
- [183] Smeaton, A.F.; Callan, J. *Personalisation and recommender systems in digital libraries*. International Journal of Digital Libraries, 5(4):299-308, August 2005.
- [184] Snowdon, D.N.; Churchill, E. F.; Frecon, E. (Eds.) *Inhabited Information Spaces - Living with your Data*. Springer, London 2004.
- [185] Strodl, S., Becker, C., Neumayer, R., Rauber, A. *How to Choose a Digital Preservation Strategy: Evaluating a Preservation Planning Procedure*. Proc. of the 2007 Conference on Digital Libraries. Vancouver, BC, Canada, JCDL '07. ACM Press, New York, NY, 29-38 (2007).
- [186] Sutcliffe, A.G.; Ennis, M.; Hu, J. *Evaluating the Effectiveness of Visual User Interfaces for Information Retrieval*. International Journal of Human-Computer Studies 53, pages 741–763, 2000.
- [187] Suzan, K. D. Tapping to the Beat of a Digital Drummer: Fine Tuning U.S. Copyright Law for Music Distribution on the Internet. *Albany Law Review* 59 (1995) : 789-829.
- [188] Tansley, R.; Bass, M.; Smith, M. *DSpace as an Open Archival Information System: Current Status and Future Directions*. In Research and Advanced Technology for Digital Libraries, 7th European Conference of Digital Libraries (ECDL 2003), August 2003.
- [189] Tedd, L. A., Large, A. Digital libraries: principles and practice in a global environment. Germany: K.G. Saur, 2005.
- [190] The CIDOC Conceptual Reference Model. <http://cidoc.ics.forth.gr> (last visited February 21, 2007)

- [191] The International DOI Foundation. *The DOI Handbook*. Edition 4.2.0, doi:10.1000/186, February 2005.
- [192] Thong, J.Y.L.; Hong, W.; Tam, K. *Understanding User Acceptance of Digital Libraries: What Are the Roles of Interface Characteristics, Organizational Context, and Individual Differences?* *International Journal of Human-Computer Studies* 57(3), pages 215–242, 2002.
- [193] Tonti G., Bradshaw J., Jeffers R., Montanari R., Suri N., Uszok A. Semantic web languages for policy representation and reasoning: A comparison of kaos, rei, and ponder. In 2nd International Semantic Web Conference (ISWC), volume 2870 of *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, pp. 419-437, Sanibel Island, FL, USA, October 2003. Springer.
- [194] Traw J. *Library Web Site Policies (Clip Notes)*, American Library Association (May 2000). 98 pp., ISBN-10: 0838980880, ISBN-13: 978-0838980880
- [195] Tsakonas, G.; Kapidakis, S.; Papatheodorou, C. *Evaluation of User Interaction in Digital Libraries*. In: Agosti, M.; Fuhr, N. (Eds.): *Notes of the DELOS WP7 Workshop on the Evaluation of Digital Libraries*. Padua, Italy, 2004. [http://dlib.ionio.gr/wp7/workshop2004\\_program.html](http://dlib.ionio.gr/wp7/workshop2004_program.html) (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [196] Uszok A., Bradshaw J., Jeffers R. *Kaos: A policy and domain services framework for grid computing and semantic web services*. In *iTrust*, vol. 2995, *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, pp. 16-26, Oxford, UK, April 2004. Springer.
- [197] Van de Sompel, H., Lagoze, C., Bekaert, J., Liu, X., Payette, S., Warner, S. (2006). *An Interoperable Fabric for Scholarly Value Chains*. *D-Lib Magazine*, 12(10). October 2006. doi:10.1045/october2006-vandesompel
- [198] Waller R. (ed.) *DELOS Clusters to Contribute to a Joint Prototype*. DELOS Newsletter #5. [http://www.delos.info/index.php?option=com\\_content&task=view&id=356&Itemid=133](http://www.delos.info/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=356&Itemid=133) (last visited February 21, 2007)
- [199] Walter, V. A. *Becoming digital: Policy implications for library and youth services*. *Library Trends*, 45(4): pp. 585-601, 1997.
- [200] Weiser, P. J. *The Internet, Innovation, and Intellectual Property Policy*. *Columbia Law Review* 103: pp. 534-613, 2003.
- [201] Wiederhold G. *Mediators in the Architecture of Future Information Systems*. *Computer*, vol. 25, no. 3, pp. 38-49, 1992.
- [202] Wiederhold, G.; Wegner, P.; Ceri, S. *Toward Megaprogramming*. *Communication of the ACM*, 38(11):89-99, November 1992.
- [203] Wilson T. D. *Information Behaviour: An Interdisciplinary Perspective*. *Information Processing and Management* 33(4), pages 551–572, 1997.
- [204] Wilson T. D. *Exploring Models of Information Behaviour: the Uncertainty Project*. (35), pages 893–849, 1999.
- [205] Witten, I.H.; Bainbridge, D.; Boddie, S.J. *Power to the People: End-user Building of Digital Library Collections*. ACM Press, 94-103, 2001.
- [206] Wormell, I. (Editor). *Information quality: Definitions and dimensions*. Los Angeles, CA, USA, Taylor Graham, 1990.
- [207] Zachman, A. J. *A framework for information systems architecture*. *IBM Systems Journal*, Vol 26, No 3. 1987.